

- ✚ AMPTEE (Aotearoa Maori Providers of Training Education & Employment)
 - ✚ Te Manuka –Consortium of Maori Private Training Establishments
 - ✚ Te Wananga o Awanuiarangi
 - ✚ Te Wananga o Aotearoa
 - ✚ Ngapuhi Social Services
 - ✚ Literacy Aotearoa
 - ✚ Te Puni Kokiri
 - ✚ NZQA Active Participant Iwi Development
 - ✚ Runanga o Ngapuhi,
 - ✚ Ngati Hine Iwi
 - ✚ Ngati Wai
 - ✚ Tourism New Zealand
 - ✚ Fullers N
4. Official Guidelines and requirements, Relevant Agencies and Services and access to these.
 5. Government Acts, Agencies- Education Acts, Education agencies, SPELD, Schools, OSCAR etc. To be completed.
 6. Education services and courses which might be available in Te Rawhiti
 7. Web sites

Te Manu E Kai Ana I Te Miro
Nona Te Ngahere
Te Manu E Kai Ana I Te Maatauranga
Nona Te Ao

NGA TAANGATA KUA PAKARI | Adults

1. Adult literacy programme
2. IT courses
3. Training courses for job changes- DOC, MAF; hospitality courses, tourism courses
4. On line courses; leisure use- hobbies to use time well, domestic budgeting, economics, accounting, vegetable and flower gardening
5. Green Light Programme.
6. Services/courses/books/Computer programmes, websites available for each need.
(match need to service support)

Services/courses/supports to be established

Services/courses/supports to be established at Te Rawhiti and local district

EXAMPLE

Project 1 Childhood Education

Aim (Strategic Direction)

To provide educational support for the children of Ngati Kuta, other hapu and the general community.

Strategy

1. **Survey:** Initial survey to indicate needs with parents and Russell Primary
- 1.2 **Survey:** Initial survey to indicate needs with parents and Ngaioitonga /Whangaruru Schools

Possibilities:

1. To provide a homework centre and a supervisor for the children specified above
2. To discover by enquiry with Ngaioitonga and Russell Primary Schools a qualified, and/or retired person to assist children designated above with schoolwork difficulties or extension,
 - ✚ either individually, at home or at the central homework place;
 - ✚ or in a group with individual help at the central homework place.
 - ✚ or by e- mail with the individual
 - ✚ or at school during a break or after school
3. To source funding for such a venture for the supervisor, the transport, food, equipment

Objectives (Specific Plans to achieve strategy)

1. To provide a safe, comfortable place for children to continue their schoolwork after school
2. To provide an experienced, knowledgeable, positive role model who is adult, as a supervisor and helper at the homework place.
3. To ensure the safe, prompt return of pupils to their homes
4. To ascertain the number of times per week such homework sessions required by parents and children

Targets

1. To have the need of a homework centre and supervisor established by the beginning of the third semester, 2007
2. To have a number of qualified persons in the area to assist with pupils' designated above problems by the end of third semester, 2007.

Performance indicators

1. Monthly checks by verbally asking parents, pupils, schools, supervisor/s about the quality of the sessions
2. To have a list of checks to be fulfilled:

Roll numbers

- ✚ **Satisfaction of children-**happy, work completed, learning problem being addressed, extensions being addressed
- ✚ **Satisfaction of parents-** transport, children learning according to needs
- ✚ **Satisfaction of schools-** schoolwork completed, quality of schoolwork acceptable, problems addressed, extension work adequate, supervisors capable
- ✚ **Satisfaction of supervisor/s-** performance indicators- knowledge, control, management.

4. ROOPU MAHI TOI | Arts and Crafts

Manager: Rangi Hemara

Assistants: Elizabeth Ellis, Ngarino Ellis, Della Margaret Hartwell, Kahurangi Hook-Henare

VISION

✚ To have an artistically developed hapu and community in traditional and modern arts

AIMS

1. To develop strategies for marae based artistic development
2. To develop all traditional artistic skills and abilities
3. To develop strategies for taking advantage of artistic programmes and teachers elsewhere
4. To develop strategies to provide for economic development of community art and artistic production
5. This Roopu is one where the capabilities of the community can be drawn out.
6. There will be some whose work can be displayed and even sold, should they wish to find employment in the market place.
7. All avenues should be explored to find materials and teachers for skilled children and adults.
8. Advantage should be taken of any Courses and School programmes available
9. Visiting art shows and exhibitions is educational

Pre School

Classes with parents or parent present for:

1. Natal, post natal-music, visual colour, playthings interesting colourful.
2. Keeping toddlers learning and occupied with interesting toys, books, music, exercises.
3. Access to cheap painting, drawing materials- crayons, chalk, paints, pencils classes.
4. Access to everyday materials for collage, montage.

School

Classes for: encouraging art participation and appreciation by parents for their children's efforts.

1. Parental involvement in creating and making art works with children.
2. Elements of traditional kowhaiwhai designs preparing for later carving, taniko, bone and stone design and carving.

Adults

Classes and Courses for:

1. **Traditional arts-** bone and stone carving, kowhaiwhai, tukutuku, taniko, weaving, taiaha.
2. **Non traditional arts-** Painting, drawing, collage, montage, print making on paper and cloth, adornment, fashion, music, singing, dancing classes- modern and older genres, photography, affordable interior decoration.

Example of Aims, Objectives, Strategies, Targets/ Key results, performance markers, future developments translated into a project.

Project 1 Regeneration and establishment of Korari.

AIMS:

1. To build a local stock of korari
2. To encourage the care and regeneration of korari in Te Rawhiti and surrounding areas
3. To establish immediate access to stocks of korari for use in the near future
4. To build a relationship with nga hapu Ngati Wai, Patukeha and local tangata whenua and non tangata whenua land owners concerning access by, a selected few, honest and approved Ngati Kuta weavers to those owners' own stocks of korari which includes planting new plants.
5. To co ordinate planning with other Ngati Kuta hapu portfolio

OBJECTIVES (Specific plans to achieve these strategic directions)

Strategy 1

- ✚ To create a project plan with aims, reasons, vision with other relevant portfolios

Strategy 2

- ✚ To form a list of weavers, willing to participate and approved by the hapu

Strategy 3:

- ✚ To approach the Roopu Whenua team re the possibility of including korari in the planned native trees and plants nursery.

Strategy 4

- ✚ To approach local landowners re the planting of korari on their whenua
- ✚ To co ordinate with Roopu Whenua, and employment in this venture

Strategy 5:

- ✚ To approach local tangata whenua landowners and non- tangata whenua land owners for what will be a Memorandum of Understanding asking that an approved and restricted list of Ngati Kuta weavers have the use of their stocks of korari above other users, including the replenishment of their stock.

Strategy 6:

- ✚ To co ordinate with Roopu Whenua to raise funding for acquiring new korari plants for immediate planting on land where owners have consented to such planting

Strategy 7

- ✚ To gain permission for local planting with a visit to promote such restoration to the landowners on their properties.

Targets

1. To source available stocks of korari.
2. To build a sustainable stock of korari, from a management plan for its care.
3. To ensure the use of this stock for Ngati Kuta's approved users.
4. To source funding for this multi-unit venture.

Timeline/ Target Indicators

1. That the weavers' list be available to the hapu.
2. That the Presentation to Owners be available to hapu.
3. That the local stocks of existing korari available for Ngati Kuta use be mapped.

4. That the owners agreeing to having korari planted on their lands, and the specific sites on a map approved by them be completed .
5. That the plant nursery establishment be participated in with other portfolios.
6. That funding be sourced with a coordinated approach for korari plants or in the appropriate planting season.
7. That a Korari Management Plan be formed with relevant portfolios and outside Agencies e.g. DOC, Project Crimson, Nursery landowner.

Future Development

- 1 That there is a stock of korari available to Ngati Kuta weavers. That this development inter connects with Roopu Whenua
- 2 That there be accredited weaving experts to hold wananga to teach weaving.



The Te Rawhiti School taken from the hill, above the Marae.

ROOPU NGAHAU | Music

Manager: Russell Hook

VISION

- ✚ That all musical ability and genre will be given expression
- ✚ That music is unifying in a community

ISSUES

1. That musical ability in the community is not being extended and given opportunities for expression
2. That traditional musical instruments are not known
3. That waiata and kapa haka are not being learned by the community children and adults
4. That modern instruments, besides the guitar, are not being taught
5. That public musical performance is not known
6. That singing is not being given expression
7. That advantage is not being taken of the opportunities to perform in the various tourist venues in the district

STRATEGIC DIRECTION

AIMS

1. To provide situations where musical ability can be expressed freely and with enjoyment

METHOD

1. To hold a musical festival with visiting musicians as featured artists
 - 1.1 To invite a few groups of different musical genre
 - 1.2 To advertise the event
 - 1.3 To have health initiatives promoted at the festival
 - 1.4 To have a person to demonstrate the traditional instruments
- 2 To have karaoke sessions
- 3 To hold regular waiata classes for the community
 - 3.1 To find a local teacher of waiata
 - 3.2 To compose new and learn old songs
- 4 To have a youth music day with a visiting DJ
 - 4.1 To find a skilled DJ and performers to attract youth
 - 4.2 To have a free expression session as part of the day
- 5 To begin a kapa haka group
 - 5.1 To secure a competent teacher for regular sessions
 - 5.2 To have safe transport for the participants to and from the marae
- 6 To find teachers for piano and keyboard and other instruments for people who are interested in learning
- 7 To have dancing classes in the different genre- line dancing,

old time and modern, rapping.

Traditional – ko auau and others

Improvisation – comb and paper, and other hand created instruments

Encouraging reading **music** and also learning Tonic Solfa (the old doh, re, me, fa method) for choral work

Modern instruments – usual guitars, keyboards, harmonica, piano accordion etc. hui, Use of microphone on stage dancing – old time and modern, line dancing (this could go in Roopu Hauora also)

5. ROOPU HAKINAKINA | Sports and Recreation

Manager: Titari Parkes

VISION

- ✚ To have a hapu involved in sporting and recreational ventures in the community and district.

AIMS

1. To encourage pre-schoolers, school age children, post-school adolescents and adults to participate in leisure sporting activities
2. To identify and support the pre-schools, schools, sporting clubs in their selection of members with ability
3. To promote the establishment of sporting and recreational ventures in Te Rawhiti and the community
4. To support and promote sport and active recreation as a community health initiative
5. To support and promote sport and active recreation as a community building initiative
6. To promote the learning of traditional skills such as Mau Rakau and others
7. That the marae needs to be used to foster whanaungatanga other than being at hui, tangi and meetings

STRATEGIC DIRECTION

A ISSUE

1. That field and team sports participation at school is not fully supported by parents and children in rural areas like Te Rawhiti
2. That a primary reason is the lack of affordable transport

METHOD

1. That a survey be carried out to ascertain children who want to participate in sports promoted by the school
2. That the schools be approached to ask generally about children's participation in sport
3. That reasons for any lack of participation be identified
4. That mid-week practice sessions may be a difficulty with Secondary School pupils
5. That should transport be a problem some solution be sought.

POLICY

1. That should transport be a problem a local OSH safe van might be hired
2. That a van might be purchased for community use

B ISSUE

1. That community team sporting activities are absent at Te Rawhiti and in the district but whanau do play sports with school and other community groups

METHOD

1. That strategies be developed to establish some sporting group in Te Rawhiti and district
2. That the sport might be Touch Rugby or Soccer or Netball or Volleyball
3. That competent adult players and referees be identified to form and sporting group
4. That the flat at Tangatapu, with the owners' consent, be prepared for play or transport to the Russell Sports Ground be arranged or another flat area be suggested for play
5. That funding might be accessed from the Gaming Trusts, RSA in Russell, Duke of Marlborough Tavern.

POLICY

1. That team sporting activities be established, promoted and supported by Ngati Kuta for the district

C ISSUE

- 1 That water sports are absent and should be promoted and supported in Te Rawhiti and district

METHOD

1. That water sports such as, kayak, yachting, rowing, water skiing, waka ama, surfing, be explored and developed
2. That a survey be carried out in the community and district to identify one or more water sports in which the community wants to participate
3. That competent, if not qualified, adults in each water sport be identified and enlisted for assistance
4. That funding from Sparc, Gaming Trusts, Nga Kaihoe o Aotearoa might be possible

POLICY

1. That skills in water sports be promoted and supported by Ngati Kuta for the whole community

D ISSUE

1. That obesity, diabetes, high blood pressure, sedentary lifestyles are a significant part of Te Rawhiti and district lives
2. That active recreation needs to be encouraged
3. That oral history from our Kuia and Kaumatua needs to be conveyed

OBJECTIVE

That a community recreation day or weekend be held at Te Rawhiti for the district and further at regular intervals in different places
That this activity encourages active recreation.

METHOD

1. That the day begins on the marae listening to some of our early history
2. That a hikoi around the peninsula from Kaingahoa to Kaimarama be carried out
3. That Kuia/ Kaumatua be driven to specific spots to tell stories about those areas
4. That lunch be healthy and the benefits of each food type be written and healthy food pamphlets be available
5. That Hauora might be present to do a height, age and weight session privately in another room so people know the distance they have to go to attempt to reach the ideal
6. That this be concurrent with or be followed by an Old Photos show projected on to a screen with accompanying stories
7. That a Ten Thousand Steps Club be established.

POLICY

1. That the health of the community be promoted and supported by Ngati Kuta
2. That our Kuia and Kaumatua have the opportunity to tell us about our past
3. That the marae is the centre of our community

E ISSUE

1. That active recreation is not generally evident in the community

AIM

4. To increase the health of Ngati Kuta, other hapu, and the general community
5. To increase the enjoyment of physical movement
6. To increase the sense of well being

OBJECTIVES

Strategy 1:

- ✚ Survey: To ask kanohi to kanohi each Te Rawhiti Ngati Kuta, other hapu and the general community
 - a) do you want a fitness class? b) Would you attend? c) What kind of activities would you like in a class? d) Would you indicate what kind of activity you like from this list?

Activities

1. Walking, Jogging, Tai Chi type exercises- stretching etc, Line dancing, Body combat,
2. Mau rakau exercises

Times for classes

1. Morning, afternoon, evening, Day or days available

Strategy 2:

- ✚ Find one or more skilled and keen people for leading these activities.

Walking groups

1. Find one or two people who walk regularly who people can contact and join for walks at times suited to each other
2. Other more skilled people for activities need to be sourced
3. Each should provide a projected programme

Strategy 3:

- ✚ Source funding for instructors

Strategy 4:

Co ordinate classes programme

Strategy 5:

Advertise programme in Russell, Ngaiotonga and surrounds.

Targets:

1. To have a diverse programme of exercise classes
2. To have classes of varying sizes according to community needs
3. To have a programme beginning by summer, 2005.

Performance indicators:

- ✚ That one exercise class be started by December, 2006
- ✚ That more than one class be available by 2006
- ✚ That numbers and names of members of classes be recorded
- ✚ That the instructors' performances and projected programmes be assessed monthly by Hapu in reports
- ✚ Requirements
- ✚ OSH, Health Department and there are more etc.

Games to be explored

- ✚ **Traditional** – string games, jack stones, hop scotch with tobacco tin, Kua Mate, Whakaropiropi hand games
- ✚ **Non traditional**- netball, football, league, soccer, basketball, touch rugby, sevens rugby, volleyball, beach volleyball, jetskiing, kayaking, speedway, breakdancing, free diving, surfing.

Agency Contacts

- ✚ FNDC - Sports and Recreation
- ✚ Russell – Waka Ama
- ✚ SPARC (The old Hillary Commission)
- ✚ AUT, Northland Poly Tech

Ma Te Wahine
Ma Te Whenua
Ka Ora Ai Te Iwi

6. ROOPU HUNGA MAHI | Employment

Manager: Michelle Elboz, Robert Willoughby

FUNCTION

✚ To source employment contracts for the hapu and community

ISSUES

1. Transport to get to employment outside of the area. Rural isolation and road conditions, Limited employment opportunities within the area outside business moving in on our area, lack of Putea, legislation changes (i.e.) black spots

AIMS

1. To purchase a vehicle to allow Ngati Kuta people to travel to and from employment out of the area.
2. To develop strategies for the management of our area to keep employment all year round
3. To develop business concepts that attract Putea to help finance other projects in our area
4. Marketing – Raising the profile
5. To work at developing job opportunities as the work is definitely here

METHOD

1. To develop and negotiate with services out side the area to provide Marae based training opportunities which meet the demands of the people, (i.e.) Driving, First aid, Diving, Landscaping, Maintenance of small engines.
2. To negotiate contracts with government departments such as WINZ, DOC, etc
3. To research and develop a business plan conducive to the area and environment.
4. To utilise local avenues to promote the profile of the area for marketing purposes
5. Establish a group to focus on local job opportunities, which reflect the interest of the people.

Project 1 SAMPLE

Aims (Strategic Direction):

1. To raise the economic level of individual Ngati Kuta, other hapu, and the general community immediately to enable them to relinquish state in the form of unemployment benefit
2. To provide access for Ngati Kuta and other hapu, and the general community to paid work

Objectives

4. To acquire a vehicle to transport workers to the places of paid work
1. To have a management committee as a sub committee with its management plan approved by Ngati Kuta
2. To allow the vehicle to be used for kuia/kaumatua/infirm and disabled when necessary
3. To have a public, comprehensive management plan for the vehicle, its drivers, its use, maintenance, and its security complying legally at all times

Target

4. To source funding for such a vehicle from state aid, private and public sponsors by the end of 2004
1. To have the vehicle, owned by Ngati Kuta, with its management plan approved by Ngati Kuta, by March, 2007

Performance Indicators

2. The vehicle
1. The management plan for the vehicle
2. Legitimate community use Log Record available at all times
3. Monthly Reports to Ngati Kuta Hapu with accounts, road use and destinations recorded.

CHAPTER FOUR

ROOPU MANA TAIAO | Environmental Management



An example of some complex subdivisions the RMU is involved with.

CHAPTER FOUR

CHAPTER FOUR ROOPU MANA TIAO Environmental Management	74
Part 1: NGA TAKE WHAKAMAHI Operations	76
Part 2: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT POLICY	76
ROOPU WHENUA Land Management	77
ROOPU MOANA Fisheries Management	111
NGATI KUTA CUSTOMARY FISHERIES UNIT	130

Manager Whenua: Helen Mountain Harte

PART ONE

INTRODUCTION

This section of the chapter sets out the organisational and policy arrangements Ngati Kuta has put in place for the administration and management of our land-based assets and resources.

Part 1: NGA TAKE WHAKAMAHI | Operations

1. Ngati Kuta Hapu Roopu Hapai Puna Taonga | Resource Management Unit
2. Whakawhaanuitanga mo Te Hapu | Capacity building
3. Whakararangi Kaupapa | Hapu project planning
4. Wahanga ki te Ture | Statutory planning processes and instruments
5. Kaupapa Taiao hei Whiriwhiri | Resource Consent consultation

Part 2: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT POLICY

- 1.1 Nga Painga mo te Taiao | Environmental Management Baselines
 - Ecosystem Quality
 - Water Quality
 - Land Quality
 - Visual Quality
 - Human Well Being
- 1.2 Specific Issue Policy
 - 1.2.1 Ahuatanga mo nga Wahi Tapu | Cultural | Spiritual/Historical/Wahi Tapu /Archaeology
 - 1.2.2 Whakahou me te Tiaki | Restoration and Preservation
 - 1.2.3 Kaupapa mo te Whenua | Land Management
 - i Whare Noho | Ahu Mahi | Arumoni | Residential/Industrial/Commercial
 - ii Kaupapa mo te Taha Moana me te Taiwhenua | Coastal and Rural Management
 - iii Kaupapa mo nga Moutere | Island Management
 - 1.2.4 Raweke Ira Tangata | Genetic Engineering
 - 1.2.5 Tapoi | Tourism
 - 1.2.6 Hau Takiwa | Air
 - 1.2.7 Whakatupato mo te Katoa | Public safety
 - 1.2.8 Te Araaka Urupa

Part 2 sets out the environmental issues of concern to Ngati Kuta, along with related policies and methods Ngati Kuta has identified. As this is our first plan of this type and given its evolving nature, we do not expect to have identified all issues of concern to us or to have developed a final policy on all issues. For this reason we have developed a set of “baselines” we would like to see responsible land resource management achieve or adhere to. In essence we are asking for the minimum standard to be set at the level of stopping further degradation of our environment. For Ngati Kuta, this is our equivalent of a precautionary approach. We welcome your feedback and input into further developing these baselines and policies.

ROOPU WHENUA | Land Management

Manager: Helen Mountain Harte



Whangamumu is beautiful but possums are a major problem. The RMU and Te Rawhiti Works Trust provided workers to work with DOC on a possum control programme in 2006.

1.0 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT UNIT

1.1 NGA KAITIAKI

Marara Hook
Helen Harte
Henare Cook
Russell Hook
Della Hartwell

Kuia
Manager
Kaitiaki
Kaitiaki
Kaitiaki

Helen Mountain Harte

Kaitiaki/Administrator

s 9(2)(a)

1.1.1. Ngati Kuta has formalised a collective of Kaitiaki who are responsible for the management and administration of the land-based resources in our district. This roopu is the Ngati Kuta Hapu Resource Management Unit. All kaitiaki appointed by Ngati Kuta Hapu are under the general direction and control of Ngati Kuta Hapu.

1.1.2 The Ngati Kuta Resource Management Unit [RMU] is the first point of contact or Ngati Kuta for all matters pertaining to land, coastal and island management. The RMU is our hands-on or working body and is responsible for the everyday administration of this Roopu Whenua section of our Hapu Management Plan.

1.2 ROLES OF THE RMU

1.2.1 Consult and seek guidance or consent with the Hapu of Ngati Kuta

1.2.2 Administer the Roopu Whenua section of our Hapu Management Plan

1.2.3 Facilitate and coordinate daily issues for Ngati Kuta regarding Roopu Whenua;

1.2.4 Coordinate and process all resource consent applications, all concession applications, licences and all other related matters that require consultation in regard to Roopu Whenua matters

1.2.5 Initiate and administer Ngati Kuta environmental Projects;

1.2.6 Work closely with the Roopu Moana (Fisheries Management Unit);

1.2.7 Coordinate policy development and planning for Roopu Whenua related matters.

1.2.8 Build relationships with all other groups and agencies who have a relationship with the natural and physical toanga of our area or whose actions and activities affect the management of those taonga.

1.3 HE KORERO HEI WHIRIWHIRI KATOA | Collaborative Consultation Policy

Our RMU is currently operational and has been established for several years. Our Kaitiaki have established knowledge and expertise of our resource management objectives. We strongly recommend that:

1.3.1 Where any party, private or government, is involved or intends becoming involved in development or land management within our area they should make contact with the RMU as early in the process as possible. There are no quick fixes if consultation processes are to be either real or satisfactory for any party. The sooner we meet and start talking the better we can both prepare for a process that will lead to a full understanding of each other's issues.

1.3.2 The Unit seeks to work collaboratively with other hapu and iwi Resource Management Units, at both policy and operational levels. Many of the issues we deal with are not unique to Ngati Kuta or our area and so it makes sense to share energy, ideas and experiences.

2.0 WHAKAWHANUITANGA MO TE HAPU | Capacity Building

Our RMU operates professionally on a daily basis. We seek to interact fully with Regional and District Councils, NZ Historic Places Trust, DOC, private development planners, engineers, landscape architects and other professionals locally, regionally and nationally. Our unit was established by Ngati Kuta from scratch, without external financial assistance. To date we have achieved workable relationships with a wide range of organisations and will continue to make a positive contribution to existing and future resource management processes to the best of our ability.

2.1 PRESENT STATUS

We have:

- 2.1.1 Established and maintained a fully operational home-based unit that interacts on a daily basis
- 2.1.2 Developed effective and proven consultation processes and interaction in pre-planning processes
- 2.1.3 Recognition for our skills and experience by other tangata whenua in both hapu and iwi structures.
- 2.1.4 Established good professional relationships
- 2.1.5 Consistent involvement in management and administrative interaction with government departments at local, regional and central levels.
- 2.1.6 A foundation membership of Te Waka Motuhake o Te Taitokerau, a network of hapu and iwi resource managers in the North
- 2.1.7 Built and maintained internal resources and office capacity

2.2 MAINTAINING AND BUILDING CAPACITY

ISSUE

To be involved in the management of our mana whenua and the future success of integrated management with Crown, Ngati Kuta and other parties, requires the ongoing and continual capacity-building of our RMU, our kaitiaki and our hapu. Building this capacity is the responsibility of Ngati Kuta. Achieving this objective is in the best interests of all parties and will require the active support and input of all our partners.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta will seek to:

- 2.2.1 Maintain the well-being of the existing and future functioning of the RMU.
- 2.2.2 Progress the RMU to enable our kaitiaki to engage in resource management in all technical fields through educational and other opportunities.
- 2.2.3 Maintain and continue to develop existing databases.
- 2.2.4 Develop a comprehensive database of all land holdings within our area with associated maps and other relevant information.
- 2.2.5 Develop a comprehensive database of all recorded archaeological sites within our area and initiate processes to record and register unrecorded sites.

- 2.2.6 Advance the unit by equipping it appropriately with modern tools and access to external resources and databases.
- 2.2.7 Achieve fulltime paid employment status for our unit kaitiaki.
- 2.2.8 Achieve the best possible management and administration of our resources and the area.
- 2.2.9 Contribute to building the best possible processes for effective management and administration of both resources and area.

3.0 WHAKARARANGI KAUPAPA | Hapu Project Plans

INTRODUCTION

- 3.1 Ngati Kuta is the tangata whenua and kaitiaki for all the whenua resources. Both statutory and government policy involving both kaitiaki and kaitiakitanga is considered to be best practice.
 - 3.1.1 To maximise the benefits of such management requires careful planning and implementation on a project-by-project basis. It is through such planning that the RMU intends providing for the full involvement of our kaitiaki and ahi kaa roa in the practical management of our area.
 - 3.1.2 Ngati Kuta has initiated kaitiaki training schemes and kaitiaki are currently training to acquire a wide range of skills and experience to allow us to later initiate our hapu project plans.
 - 3.1.3 The development of these hapu project plans are seen as central to allowing for the participation of Ngati Kuta in the various activities of all parties that affect our Roopu Whenua in a proactive, transparent and measured manner.

POLICY

- 3.2 Ngati Kuta intends to work collaboratively with the Department of Conservation, Regional and District Councils, Ministry of Fisheries, Ministry of Health and the New Zealand Historic Place Trust to develop Hapu Project Plans to enhance, and if necessary, restore the various elements of the native environment within the area.
 - 3.2.1 We ask the various government agencies with statutory or management functions to recognise those areas we have identified as priorities when developing their own project and business plans and to provide for Ngati Kuta active involvement accordingly.
- 3.3 Priority Areas for Hapu Project Plan development are:
 - 3.3.1 Pest eradication on all of the islands and the adjacent coastal mainland
 - 3.3.2 Native tree planting and native habitat enhancement programmes on the islands
 - 3.3.3 Establishing a Ngati Kuta native tree nursery
 - 3.3.4 Provision of composting toilets at Whangamumu
 - 3.3.5 Ecological restoration of all DOC and Council public areas in Rawhiti
 - 3.3.6 Protection and enhancement of wetlands

3.3.7 Sealing of roads

3.3.8 Control and eradication of noxious weeds and problem trees within the area.

3.4 The RMU will remain responsible for the negotiation and preparation of Hapu Project Plans and, once approved by Ngati Kuta, the implementation of such plans.

3.5 Ngati Kuta invites any parties who seek to involve tangata whenua in practical work programmes to contact the RMU as their initial point of contact with Ngati Kuta.

4.0 WAHANGA KI TE TURE | Statutory Processes and Instruments

INTRODUCTION

4.1 The statutory management of our Roopu Whenua assets and resources are governed under a number of Acts of Parliament. These include the Resource Management Act 1991, the Conservation Act 1987, and the Historic Place Act 1993. All these Acts have requirements to involve Ngati Kuta in their administration and implementation.

The key sections of these Acts in this regard are:

4.1.2 The Conservation Act 1987

Section 4

This Act shall so be interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

4.1.3 The Resource Management Act 1991

Section 6(e)

All persons exercising functions and powers under this Act shall recognise and provide for the relationship of Maori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wahi tapu and other taonga

Section 7(a)

All persons exercising powers and functions under this Act shall have particular regard to kaitiakitanga

Section 8

All persons exercising functions and powers under this Act shall take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

Sections 61(2A)(a)(ii) & 74(2A)(a)

Requires councils to take into account any relevant planning documents recognised by an iwi authority

4.1.4 The Historic Places Act 1993

Section 4(c)

All persons exercising functions and powers under this Act shall recognise the relationship of Maori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wahi tapu and other taonga.

4.1.5 Under these Acts various government agencies are responsible for preparing and implementing a range of Policy Statements, Strategies and Plans. These statutory instruments contain the “rulebooks” for how our Roopu Whenua resources are managed.

4.1.6 They also set out the processes by which those agencies operate.

4.1.7 For Ngati Kuta to become an effective partner in the management of our resources, we need to be more proactively involved in the writing, reviewing and implementation of these “rule books”.

4.2 Key Statutory Instruments for our area include:

- The Conservation Management Strategy for Northland (DOC)
- The Regional Policy Statement for Northland (NRC)
- The Regional Coastal Plan for Northland (NRC)
- The Regional Water and Soil Plan for Northland (NRC)
- The Regional Air Plan for Northland (NRC)
- The Regional Pest Management Strategies for Northland (NRC)
- The District Plan (FNDC)

4.3 There are also national policies in place or in preparation that will affect our local planning, in addition to these regional and district planning tools. These include:

- The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement
- The New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy
- The New Zealand Oceans Policy
- National Environmental Standards

4.4 The Local Government Act 2002. Local government issues are addressed by the Far North District Council and Northland Regional Council in this Act.

4.4.1 This covers a wide range of activities and functions of both the regional and district councils

4.4.2 There are activities are not covered by the Resource Management Act in this LGA Act.

4.4.3 The activities of the Councils have a significant impact on Ngati Kuta and our Roopu Whenua - roading, services (especially water, waste, sewerage), coasts, discharges, libraries, parks, reserves, civil defence, etc.

4.4.4 The Local Government Act has a major emphasis on community input and control.

4.4.5 There are significant sections in this Act that specifically require the recognition of the role and responsibilities of Ngati Kuta, including:

- **Section 4.** Parts 2 and 6 provide principles and requirements for local authorities are intended to facilitate participation by Maori in local authority decision-making processes.

- These parts recognise and respect the Crown's responsibility to take appropriate account of the principles of Treaty of Waitangi and to maintain and improve opportunities for Maori to contribute to local government decision-making process,

4.4.6 Long Term Council Community Plans (LTCCP). Under the Local Government Act both NRC and FNDC must produce these long term plans. They become a principal interface between the councils and their communities.

POLICY

4.5 Ngati Kuta will become more actively involved in the preparation, review, implementation and monitoring of all statutory instruments that impact the management of our Whenua.

4.5.1 These instruments include, but are not limited to:

- The National Coastal Policy Statement
- The New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy
- The Northland Regional Policy Statement
- The Northland Regional Coastal Plan
- The Northland Regional Water and Soil Plan
- The Northland Regional Air Plan
- The Northland Regional Pest Strategy
- The Far North District Plan
- The Northland Conservancy Conservation Management Strategy.
- Long-Term Council Community Plans

4.5.2 Ngati Kuta requests that all agencies preparing, reviewing, implementing and monitoring these and related or similar instruments consult with Ngati Kuta from the outset of the process via our Resource Management Unit in the first instance.

4.5.3 Ngati Kuta is prepared to consider involvement in wider collective groups for the purposes of assisting in such processes.

4.5.4 We retain, of course, the right to be consulted directly and independently of any such process.

4.5.5 Ngati Kuta requests and encourages all agencies responsible for any statutory planning instruments that affect our Roopu Whenua to be cognisant of the lack of resourced capacity of Ngati Kuta to provide input into such instruments in the past and to provide active assistance to facilitate our involvement in the future.

4.5.6 Ngati Kuta requests that this Hapu Management Plan be taken into account in the preparation or review of all statutory and non-statutory instruments (Strategies, Policy Statements and Plans) that affect our area as the initial step in involving Ngati Kuta.

- 4.5.7** We note that this Hapu Management Plan is not a substitute for direct consultation with Ngati Kuta and that Ngati Kuta expects direct consultation *kanohi ki te kanohi* to be employed as an integral part of all processes.
- 4.5.8** Where, for whatever reason, there has not been Ngati Kuta input into statutory planning processes, such silence or inaction is not to be interpreted as agreement or acceptance of any such plan or policy.
- 4.5.9** The RMU will work with all statutory agencies in investigating and initiating effective processes and monitoring of activities and developments to ensure compliance of the Conservation Act, Resource Management Act, and all other associated Acts and/or Policy. As well as these, the compliance of processes arising from the implementation of these Acts such as resource consent conditions, heritage schedules, monitoring strategies and other databases.
- 4.5.10** The RMU wishes to be included in all planning and decision-making (including development of legislation), memoranda of understandings and/or management protocols with all parties as a means to achieving better management of the native and natural resources and heritage values within the area.

5.0 KAUPAPA TAIAO HEI WHIRIWHIRI | Resource Consent Consultation

ISSUES

- 5.1** The Resource Management Act provides for the control of effects arising from the management, development and use of natural and physical resources through a system of resource consents issued by regional and district councils. These are processed on either a notified or non-notified basis. In some instances the Department of Conservation has a role to play, especially in the processing and issuing of Coastal Permits. There are statutory and are best-practice directives that provide for the involvement of Ngati Kuta in the processing of these consents with FNDC Resource Consents Department and DOC, NRC, HPT.
- 5.1.1** At present we receive only a portion of all consent applications proposing development within the area. It becomes very difficult to protect our values and our environment when we are not notified of applications for consents at the outset of such processes. Likewise, we are unable to monitor activities authorised by consents or the activities of those who continue to develop without the appropriate resource consents unless we receive accurate and timely copies of all relevant consent processes.
- 5.1.2** Our Resource Management Unit is responsible for the administration of all consent applications for both land and marine activities on behalf of Ngati Kuta. The RMU works as a collective with other hapu resource management units within Taumarere and, when appropriate, with Nga Hapu o Ngapuhi and Ngatiwai, but we, as ahi kaa have mana moana and mana whenua, which means we have the final decision for matters in our rohe.

- 5.1.3 Our aim in formalising our structure through this Plan is to ensure that all resource consent and coastal permit applications are processed directly through our Resource Management Unit and are our decision, unless we require consultation to reach that decision.

5.2 POLICY

The RMU will review, on behalf of Ngati Kuta:

- 5.2.1 All notified and non-notified resource consent and coastal permit applications proposed for activities within our tribal boundaries
- 5.2.2 All applications for tourism-related activities, concessions, etc
- 5.2.3 In reviewing such applications, our interests include, but are not limited to:
- The actual or potential effects on our cultural values
 - The actual or potential effects on our natural environment
 - Archaeology and wahi tapu matters
 - Suitability of sites to be developed i.e.: engineering assessments
 - Building plans detailing all height, width, length and other relevant specifications
 - Earthworks and landscape plans
 - Colour schemes
 - Intended use, e.g. whether it is private or commercial development

5.3 METHODS

- 5.3.1 By agreeing with Northland Regional and Far North District Councils and the Department of Conservation appropriate processes for informing Ngati Kuta of all notified and non-notified applications for resource consents, permits, etc of interest to Ngati Kuta or affecting the Ngati Kuta area.
- 5.3.2 By developing mutually-agreed processes and appropriate timeframes with Northland Regional and Far North District Councils to allow us to conduct site visits and assessments of all proposed activities before final decisions and consents are granted.
- 5.3.3 By engaging with all prospective property developers, either directly or through their planners, at the earliest possible stage of their development to agree the process by which Ngati Kuta will consider and monitor the development. This will include conducting site visits and assessments of all proposed activities prior to lodging resource consent applications to Council.
- 5.3.4 By developing these best practice standards and guidelines, either on our own or in collaboration with other RMU and agencies, for development processes and outcomes within our area.
- 5.3.5 The following sample form details some of our standard requests when processing a consent application. Depending on the type of application,

other information may be required. Our kaitiaki will contact the applicant if further information is required.

NGATI KUTA HAPU INFORMATION REQUEST FORM

NGATI KUTA HAPU KI TE RAWHITI Information Request Form	
<p>Tena koe, Ngati Kuta Resource Management Unit is responsible for administering Hapu Consultation with regard to your Resource Consent Application. In order for us to successfully review your Resource Consent Application, we require the following details and documents. Please forward this correspondence at your earliest convenience so that we can process your application promptly. Feel free to contact us should you need assistance with any of the following requests.</p>	
<p>Please Forward to:</p>	
Email:	s 9(2)(a) ph-Cs 9(2)(a)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name and Address of Applicant
<input type="checkbox"/>	Postal Address of Applicant (if different from above)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contact Phone Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	Email Address and Mobile Phone Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contact Person or Agent and Address (if any)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Resource Consent Application Number (please indicate if you have applied for Resource Consent with FNDC/Northland Regional Council or indicate if your request is a preliminary assessment)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Applicants Proposal (in detail)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Location of Property for development
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address of Property
<input type="checkbox"/>	Activity Classification (Controlled, Restricted Discretionary, Discretionary)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Property Zoning
<p>Also include any of the following documents that may be relevant to your proposal:</p>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Recorded Archaeological Sites for the property and Archaeological Assessments
<input type="checkbox"/>	1xA3 & 1xA4 Scale Copy of the Scheme Plan
<input type="checkbox"/>	Copy of the Certificate of Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Telecom and Power Correspondence and Plan (detailing the intended areas for construction)
<input type="checkbox"/>	DOC Advice – Interpretation of NZAA Data
<input type="checkbox"/>	Print out of Cadastral Index from Terraviva
<input type="checkbox"/>	Engineers Appraisal (detailing stormwater runoff, site stability etc)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Neighbours Approvals
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sewage/Waste Water Scheme Plan (inclusive of all design and performance specifications)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Building Plans (inclusive of all design and measurement specifications)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Earthworks
<input type="checkbox"/>	Landscape Plan (inclusive of the types of trees/shrubs proposed for planting)

5.4 UTU MO NGA RAUPAPA MAHI | Consent Consultation Fees

ISSUE

Our resource management office incurs costs when reviewing consents. Consultation places a burden on Ngati Kuta's organisation, therefore we must charge fees to review each application.

POLICY

The RMU will continue to maintain and develop its professional capacity and standards in order to provide a professional service of the highest quality. The RMU will seek to recover its costs in providing this service through a clearly defined fee structure for its services

METHOD

The following Fee Schedule explains what our fees are for the different applications and identifies our costs. The RMU reserves the right to adjust this schedule without further notice.

NGATI KUTA HAPU CONSULTATION FEE SCHEDULE

NGATI KUTA HAPU Consultation Fee Schedule

- 1 Resource Consent, Concession Permit, Licence Application
 - i Standard Consultation [SC]
Up to 16 hours | \$480.00
 - ii Major Development Application [MDA]
80 hours plus | \$1000.00
 - iii Major Development Consultation
6 hours and more \$20.00 per person, per hour
 - iv Preliminary Cultural Assessment or Application Review
\$150.00 S C will apply to assessments over 3 hours
 - v Monitoring earthworks
\$15.00 per hour per person. A maximum of two persons may monitor excavations
- 2 Multi-Iwi and/or Hapu Project Planning, Cultural Advice Consultation Meetings
An hourly rate of \$70.00 will apply including transport expenses which are charged at 90c per kilometre

Cash koha payments will not be accepted. An invoice will be posted.

Fee Justification

- general administration costs | postage | photocopying | stationery
- office expenses | telecom | power | hardware maintenance
- koha to Marae for consultation with hapu x 1 [SC] (\$50 koha)
- koha to Marae for consultation with hapu x 2-3 [MDC] (\$100-\$150 koha)
- travel | site inspections | planning meetings – out of town
- research Maori Land Court records and maps
- interviewing Kaumatua and Kuia for history and tribal knowledge
- professional independent advice
- full signed report

Please note:

*All cheques payable to "Ngati Kuta".
Direct payments to hapu Bank Account on request*

2 KAUPAPA MO TE TAI AO | Environmental Baselines and Policy

This section sets out Ngati Kuta policy on environmental matters. Policy has been prepared for a range of such matters. As this is our first plan, we do not expect our policy to necessarily cover all areas that may be of concern to Ngati Kuta. For this reason we have included a section entitled “Management Plan Baselines”.

These baselines acknowledge that all aspects of our environment have been affected or impacted by increasing human interaction and that we need to strive at all times to ensure that enhancement of our environment is the overriding and ongoing goal. Where no policy has been included for specific issues, our silence on these matters should not be taken to read that we have no concerns. It simply means that no confirmed policy has been agreed by Ngati Kuta at the time of preparing this Plan. We envisage policy development to be an ongoing and core function of the RMU.

In addition we have also included a number of environmental policies which have been developed from existing policy prepared by the Ngatiwai Trust Board Resource Management Unit. Those policies have been developed over time by NTB for consideration by Ngatiwai hapu. They have also been offered for the wider use of other iwi and hapu o Te Taitokerau. These have been included in this Revised Draft of the Ngati Kuta Hapu Management Plan to allow Ngati Kuta members to consider the merits of adopting these policies within our Plan.

2.1 NGA PAINGA MO TE AO | Environmental Management Baselines

Ecosystem Quality, Water Quality, Land Quality, Visual Quality, Human Well-Being

2.1.1 Ecosystem Quality

We have always considered that all parts of our environment are intimately connected. The health of one part of the environment is dependent on the health of the whole. People and our interaction with our world are inter-dependent.

For generations, Ngati Kuta have relied on a direct relationship with our natural and physical world to provide for our day to day sustenance and survival. Central to our being is our ability to continue to gather kai for ourselves and our manuhiri, not only for special occasions but on a day to day basis. This then becomes our first benchmark – the capacity of our environment to sustain the community. For Ngati Kuta a healthy ecosystem is an adequate and safe sustainable harvest of a full range of food sources. For the environment to supply us kai, then the ecosystem must also have an adequate supply of healthy food to nurture itself.

Strict methods of management need to be implemented to maintain the quality of our ecosystems and their constituent components. This includes impacts on the air, all plant life, wildlife and native food sources by minimising contamination and other adverse impacts with all proposed future developments. The natural and native habitats of all species need to be monitored to ensure that there are no more than minimal disturbances to their food sources and living environment.

The traditional bio-indicators for a healthy ecosystem are the distinctive cry of the kiwi at night and the kukupa flying during the day. The kiwi is never heard now and the kukupa are few.

2.1.1 Water Quality

Our waterways have always been our most important food basket. To protect the fisheries it is essential to first look to maintaining the home of the fish. Any reduction in our fisheries is a signal that either the pressure on the resource itself is too great or that the home of the fish has not been respected.

In addition to being a food basket, our waterways are places where our children play, learn and grow. Reducing the quality of these toanga reduces the ability of Ngati Kuta to have a full and healthy relationship with them.

Maintaining and enhancing the water quality of all waterways in the area then becomes our second benchmark. We should not allow any further reduction in current standards.

All fresh and salt waterways will be monitored to ensure a high quality of water in order to maintain levels of quality and to implement strategies to reduce and prevent contamination. It will be our absolute priority to ensure that:

- the high quality of water for food sources extracted from our waterways will be kept in a consumable state at all times
- a high quality environment for all freshwater and marine wildlife and that all waterways are maintained and sustained at all times
- a high water quality suitable for human recreational purposes be maintained

The traditional bio indicators for healthy water ways are the eels swimming in streams, like Wairoa and Tangatapu and they are not there.

2.1.3 Land Quality

Ngati Kuta is tangata whenua. To break our relationship with our land would be to destroy who we are.

Increasing development continues to erode the natural values of the land. We are realistic enough to know that some impact is an inevitable conclusion to increasing human occupation and interaction. We consider that responsible management of these effects should also ensure that the essential character of the area (its coastal rural outlook, low-level of settlement, large areas of native forest, uncluttered beaches and rocky headlands) should be retained regardless of the type or scale of future development proposed.

Subdivision, Landuse and Developments will be assessed and monitored in order to comply with the plan objectives and the baselines it sets. The aim is to retain the 'rural outlook' of the area and to achieve quality developments that contribute to the sustainability of the land in a manner that result in minor or minimal adverse effects. The RMU will therefore evaluate all applications for land development for their effects on the following values:

- Environmental
- Spiritual
- Historical
- Cultural
- Visual

2.1.4 Visual Quality

When we look out on our area, Ngati Kuta sees more than landscape. It contains our history of ourselves and our associations with all aspects of our world – the sea, the mountains, the waterways. It is important to us that we will always be able to look upon this natural world and not through a veil of houses and other visual intrusions.

Having a presence on the landscape in a manner that does not detract from the natural balance of the land is not necessarily a question of huge expense or expertise. It is often a matter of showing care and thoughtfulness to the shape, location, colour and landscaping of developments.

The RMU will continue to assess the quality of subdivisions, landuse and developments in light of their potential to impact visually on our landscape.

2.1.5 Human Well-Being

Underpinning this section of the Plan is our desire to see the well-being of our people maintained and enhanced. As kaitiaki, we must up-hold the vision of providing a healthy environment to enhance quality of life and to ensure safe interaction of all activities within our area. It will be our absolute priority to maintain:

- Safety
- Health
- Access
- Amenities
- No development within the area should be allowed to pose a risk to well-being of the community.

2.2 AHUATANGA MO NGA WAHI TAPU | Cultural, Spiritual & Historical Values Sites Of Cultural Significance, Wahi Tapu & Archaeology

ISSUES

Ngati Kuta values are many. Our whakapapa, ancestral and tribal occupancy goes back hundreds of years. There is vast evidence of Prehistoric Maori occupation throughout the whole area and Ngati Kuta believes such sites must be protected. Some of these sites and wahi tapu, are very special to Ngati Kuta and some are, in fact, tapu. As today's kaitiaki, Ngati Kuta has the ultimate responsibility of ensuring such sites remain undisturbed and that the impacts of activities and development on all such sites are the absolute minimum possible.

As the various types of wahi tapu are many, for the purposes of this plan Ngati Kuta kaitiaki will assess and monitor all activities subdivisions, landuse and developments within the area to ensure the protection and preservation of such sites. This does not mean that we automatically oppose any disturbance or interaction with such sites. The historical values that some of the sites hold (such as pipi middens, traditional gardening trenches etc.) are in fact ideal sites whereby careful interaction could be initiated for educational purposes.

This policy applies to all sites. It is not only restricted to sites registered with the New Zealand Historic Places Trust or the New Zealand Archaeological Association. Many sites are either not registered or not recorded. Nor is it restricted to just sites where there is physical evidence of habitation. For Ngati Kuta all places where our tuupuna interacted with the physical environment are of great interest. This might include places where battles were fought or other instances of blood being spilt, waka landing or launching sites, places that were made tapu because of some human infringement of tikanga, trails that were used to get from one place to another or sites used by tohunga for a variety of reasons. We believe that such places were made “special” in the past for a variety of reasons. As the kaitiaki of this generation, we know that interference in such matters without proper cultural protection can cause harm to come. One of our responsibilities is to protect the cultural, spiritual and physical health of all those who now visit our area.

The Bay of Islands area holds much evidence of past Maori and European historical occupation and other activities. Many wahi tapu and archaeological sites connected with this part of our history are prominent features and are taonga to both Maori and non-Maori. Such rich history requires special management and preservation of these sites is paramount.

We acknowledge the vast number of archaeological sites recorded with New Zealand Archaeology Association and all unrecorded sites or areas within the area. Present protection and preservation of these special sites and areas is ad-hoc and requires more stringent management and administration processes and practices. With the increasing development pressure on our land, archaeological, waahi tapu, and taonga protection is an area that requires better management. For example, there are a number of self-employed local residents offering earthwork services. These are often found operating without supervision and unaware of archaeological sites and area placement and their significant values. As a result many sites and areas, both recorded and unrecorded, are being damaged or destroyed. Commissioning an archaeologist to identify sites or areas is a costly exercise for the developer or property owner and, as we acknowledge the average resident is not always able to meet such costs, new methods have to be investigated and implemented if we are to be serious about protecting these values.

POLICY

The RMU will work with responsible landowners and developers to find ways of ensuring adequate and appropriate protection for wahi tapu and other sites of significance where such sites are threatened with disturbance or abuse. Ngati Kuta advocates that the following principles should be applied where there are actual or potential effects on such sites:

The RMU should be contacted at the earliest opportunity where any development or other activity can or may impact on the cultural and spiritual values of Ngati Kuta. Where there is actual or potential impact on any such values, the RMU is responsible for further consultation within the structures of Ngati Kuta over these issues.

Where any activity results in disturbance of any site, Ngati Kuta requests that all work shall cease and all relevant authorities, including the RMU, be contacted. Work or activities causing the disturbance should not re-commence until appropriate action has been agreed by all relevant parties including Ngati Kuta.

METHODS

The RMU will develop processes for Ngati Kuta to protect all wahi tapu and archaeological sites. We aim to formalise more stringent practices with New Zealand Historic Places Trust, Maori Heritage Trust and other local government bodies to ensure the protection, preservation and conservation of all archaeological and wahi tapu sites and areas within the area.

The RMU has (and will continue to develop) procedures to be followed where development and other activity may impact wahi tapu and other sites of importance to Ngati Kuta. Where such development and activities are the subject of resource consents Ngati Kuta will advocate for these to incorporate adequate measures into the relevant consent conditions to ensure the protection of our sites and wahi tapu:

Ngati Kuta will work with relevant agencies/interest groups to develop:

- a register of all digger/earthwork owner/operators residing or operating within the area.
- an archaeological information fact sheet to distribute to all residents and earthwork operators within Taumarere.
- an archaeological site record manual for the Q05 area for local earthwork owner/operators.
- the development and promotion of guidelines for all earthwork operations that will ensure sufficient supervision of earthworks. This should include:
 - developing and initiating assessment and monitoring processes before, during and after development that will be carried out either by Ngati Kuta, or in collaboration with NZHPT and/or independent archaeologists
 - identifying an appropriate level of protection of sites and areas
 - promotion of Heritage Covenants for significant sites and areas, both Maori and non-Maori, within the area
 - effective processes and monitoring of developments to ensure compliance of the Historic Places Act 1993
 - strict penalties for damage and destruction of sites and areas
 - the negotiation/initiation of a government-funded archaeological assessment for the entire of the Bay of Islands area to record sites that have not yet been recorded on both private and government-owned land.
- the RMU will ask NZHPT, DOC, NRC and FNDC to meet with Ngati Kuta and determine a collaborative approach to the management of our heritage and that of more recent arrivals to our area.

The following sample is a standard form that Ngati Kuta issue to every person applying to the NZHPT to modify, damage or destroy an archaeological site or area. This form is to be completed and returned to the RMU together with a copy of the standard NZHPT application form.

All applications to modify, damage and/or destroy any archaeological site must be accompanied with a qualified archaeologist's assessment and confirmation from the applicant for Ngati Kuta kaitiaki to enter onto the property to assess the site(s) and/or area(s).



The culvert at Tangatapu where the twenty-metre drain releases water from the hills. Here is the evidence of the mangroves moving further from the roadside where they once grew well. The reeds are now replacing them because the clay and metal from the unsealed road has covered the mudflats. This is but one of the issues the Resource Management Unit has to deal with. January 2005

NGATI KUTA HAPU ASSESSMENT FOR APPLICATIONS TO DESTROY, DAMAGE OR MODIFY ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES

NGATI KUTA HAPU KI TE RAWHITI HAPU ASSESSMENT FOR APPLICATIONS TO DESTROY, DAMAGE OR MODIFY ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES

TO ENABLE TANGATA WHENUA TO PROCESS APPLICATIONS TO THE HISTORIC PLACES TRUST TO DESTROY, DAMAGE OR MODIFY ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES, PLEASE COMPLETE EVERY SECTION. PLEASE ENSURE THAT EACH SITE, IF MORE THAN ONE, STATES WHAT TYPE OF ACTIVITY WILL AFFECT EACH SITE AND A SEPARATE FORM MUST BE USED FOR EACH APPLICATION.

APPLICANT:

CONTACT DETAILS

HISTORIC PLACES TRUST APPLICATION NUMBER

SITE ONE:

NZAA SITE No: Q05/ _____ PROPERTY LEGAL DESCRIPTION _____

DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY LIKELY TO AFFECT
SITE _____

HAS THIS SITE ALREADY BEEN DISTURBED? Yes | No How? MODIFIED | DAMAGED | DESTROYED

SITE TWO:

NZAA SITE No: Q05/ _____ PROPERTY LEGAL DESCRIPTION _____

DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY LIKELY TO AFFECT
SITE _____

HAS THIS SITE ALREADY BEEN DISTURBED? Yes | No How? MODIFIED | DAMAGED | DESTROYED

SITE THREE:

NZAA SITE No: Q05/ _____ PROPERTY LEGAL DESCRIPTION _____

DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY LIKELY TO AFFECT
SITE _____

HAS THIS SITE ALREADY BEEN DISTURBED? Yes | No How? MODIFIED | DAMAGED | DESTROYED

SITE FOUR:

NZAA SITE No: Q05/ _____ PROPERTY LEGAL DESCRIPTION _____

DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY LIKELY TO AFFECT
SITE _____

2.3 WHAKAHOU ME TE TIAKI | Restoration and preservation

ISSUE

Preserving and restoring natural resources and heritage within the area is our priority. We aim to develop and initiate projects that will enhance and sustain the environment and intend to assess all proposed developments and activities to ensure that the natural heritage, historical and cultural values within our area are protected, preserved and, where appropriate, enhanced.

POLICY

The RMU will continue to advocate that future developments in our area proactively contribute to the overall restoration and preservation of the natural environment.

The RMU will continue to seek to develop projects, either individually or in collaboration with other groups or agencies, to allow Ngati Kuta to be actively involved in the preservation and restoration of our environment. These will range from hands-on projects for weed and pest control, restoration plantings, environmental monitoring to policy and design work.

2.4 LAND MANAGEMENT

2.4.1 Commercial | Industrial | Residential

Ngati Kuta intends to assess and monitor all developments within the area. The following paragraphs indicate some of our current areas of concern. This is not intended to limit on the scope of our future interests, policies and procedures.

(a) Commercial, Industrial and Residential Activities

ISSUES

The nature and scope of commercial development within the area are many. There are two major types of activities responsible for such development; tourism related development and those associated with the increasing subdivisions. Where these are small in scale and undertaken by people with a genuine concern for maintaining the well-being of the area, these tend to be minor in the effects they generate. Over-development of certain commercial activities that can generate increased effects on the viable sustainability of our environment is a concern. In general terms, Ngati Kuta is opposed to the establishment of any large-scale commercial/industrial development and the effects that these are likely to have on the natural character and values of the area.

POLICY

To protect the environment, and in particular its natural eco-systems, agree to sustainable development that does not cause hindrance and/or stress to the Bay of Islands natural and native environment.

To ensure all developments are consistent with the provisions of this plan

METHODS:

To actively monitor and participate in resource consent applications for all activities that may cause undue effects on the environment of our area.

Ngati Kuta is strongly opposed to the establishment of commercial activities on the Islands such as:

- restaurants and bars
- motels, lodges, cabins and huts
- resorts

Ngati Kuta therefore requests that Council ensures that Ngati Kuta is consulted on any such applications and that Council gives careful consideration, and if of a mind to grant consent, will do so with stringent conditions.

(b) Sewerage

ISSUES

The current state of sewerage treatment and disposal within our area is of serious concern to Ngati Kuta. All parts of our area are currently susceptible to being adversely affected by sewage contamination. Our fresh and salt waterways are becoming increasingly polluted with human waste because of land-based activities. Current land-based sewage treatment and disposal systems are insufficient to adequately treat and dispose of sewerage.

POLICY

To ensure the protection of our environment through requesting higher standards of policy and management for sewerage and an increased priority on mechanisms to minimise further sewage effluent contamination through the implementation of quality sewerage management.

METHODS

In conjunction with the relevant agencies (in particular FNDC, NRC and Northland Health):

1. assess the overall impact and level of contamination from sewerage treatment and disposal, and investigate options and methods to improve the current state.
2. establish and maintain a register of all septic tanks and tank design within the area. This should include provision for assessing the overall use of all septic tanks (full-time resident/holiday homes/community facilities, etc) in order to be able to predict seasonal loadings.
3. assess property isolation factors and identify property owners who do not have their septic tanks maintained professionally. This needs to include those situated on islands and those that cannot be reached by disposal trucks via road.
4. identify the different household septic tank systems (and any alternative technology) available and their level of performance in order to be able to recommend the best quality products appropriate for installation in differing situations.
5. plan for the installation of quality land-based sewerage treatment from discharges from holding tanks for boat users and motor-caravans.
6. promote the increased use of native wetlands (both natural and planted) to enhance the natural filtering of any contamination
7. work with local government and other professionals to identify issues regarding land-based treatment plants, and to actively participate in grade and developing strategies

to upgrade or replace existing facilities in order to increase their capacity and function.

New Process/Proposal

That all commercial and industrial establishments within the area, which do not have their own land-based septic tank system installed, pay an annual sewerage contribution fee to the Far North District Council.

That all contributions are set aside in a separate account, and the funds re-distributed to install, maintain and upgrade land-based sewerage holding tanks within the area.

(c) Refuse

ISSUES

The overall amount of fly-dumping of household rubbish and inorganic waste such as car wrecks and white ware is a growing concern.

POLICY

To protect the environment through the implementation of a sustainable and comprehensive waste management programme.

METHODS

1. to work with councils and other professionals to develop and initiate strategies
2. promote and encourage local recycling
3. manage organic waste by promoting and establishing suitable composting sites within the area
4. work with Council to identify areas requiring waste bins
5. implement waste management awareness programmes within the community
6. plan for the disposal of non organic waste
7. plan for the disposal of all waste from island residents and users

(d) Roads

ISSUES

Current road networks within the area are substandard and unsafe. Some roads remain unsealed and adversely contribute to silt run-off into the waterways. Excessive dust factors are hazardous to human health with contamination to drinking water

POLICY

1. Ngati Kuta will advocate for the provision and maintenance of a safe road network for people and industry within the area.

2. Ngati Kuta will advocate increasing the percentage of sealed roads and to be fully involved in investigation and planning for future road user needs.

METHODS

The RMU will work with New Zealand Transport Agency and Far North District Council to:

1. assess the overall network and identify methods to improve roads
2. assess the condition of drains and natural water flows
3. assess for safety and identify dangerous spots
4. assess accessibility for emergency services
5. assess road signs and adequacy
6. assess costs for repairs, upgrades and seal
7. assess other trouble areas
8. prioritise roading issues and prepare a strategic plan for implementation
9. investigate and assess impacts from unsealed roads on the coastal , wetland and river ecosystems, particularly as they affect traditional food sources

Recommendation

To discuss and negotiate with Far North District Council a method whereby all road contributions paid from developments within the area are set aside in a separate holding account for re-distribution on road infrastructure within the area

2.4.2 KAUPAPA MO TE TAI MOANA ME TE TAIWHENUA | Coastal and Rural Management

With the increases in residential housing and recreational use of our coastal and rural resources, Ngati Kuta needs to better manage activities that demand increased development. For example, more residents living on the coast increases significantly the pressure on roading and infrastructure. It is important to introduce forward planning to accommodate such growth and in a manner that is consistent with the baselines of our plan.

(a) Water Quality

ISSUE

Maintaining the water quality within the area is paramount. It must be an over-riding priority.

POLICY

To monitor and maintain healthy water within the area. All water used for sustaining human health needs to be maintained to safe levels for human consumption without artificial treatment.

METHODS

To train our kaitiaki to take water samples, both fresh and salt, and regularly test for contaminants for all waterways (including the coastal margins) in our area

Develop and maintain a database of waterway quality for the area

Monitor land and sea based activities and develop strategies to reduce contamination to waterways

(b) Moorings, Wharves, Jetties & Boat Ramps

ISSUES

The current status quo allows applicants to establish moorings, wharves, jetties and boat ramps within our area. There are a range of potential effects that can result from both the proposal and from all the activities associated with them. For example, increasing use of boat ramps where adequate services such as rubbish collection are not provided inevitably leads to fly dumping. We feel that existing legislation does not apply appropriate management objectives currently needed for the Bay of Islands. Better management objectives must be identified

POLICY

1. Ngati Kuta wishes to be fully involved in all reviews of policies and controls on moorings, wharves, jetties and boat ramps.
2. Ngati Kuta wishes to be fully consulted on all development proposals involving moorings, wharves, jetties and boat ramps within our area.

METHODS

1. The RMU will continue to advocate for Ngati Kuta to be fully involved in all processes concerning wharves, moorings, jetties and boat ramp within our area
2. The RMU will discuss all developments that propose an increased use of wharves, moorings, jetties and boat ramps to ensure that the effects of such proposals and activities associated with them are minimised.

New Proposal

- assess every application on:
 - size of vessel in ownership
 - if the applicant is a permanent resident or part time resident
 - isolation factors such as road access, nearest boat ramp, nearest wharf or slipway
 - intended use such as recreational or commercial
 - current developments within a bay and further capacity
 - visual, environmental and cultural impacts
 - public benefits and access
 - if the structure is permanent
- developing a plan whereby activities are contained in certain areas and not spread all over the place and ensuring that developments do not restrict public access and interaction that does not allow unnecessary development establishing an annual environment levy for coastal marine structures

(c) Subdivisions

ISSUES

Subdivisions are becoming more common within the area and large farm blocks are being subdivided into smaller lots. With this increasing trend, our current coastal and rural outlook is under serious threat.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta acknowledges the importance of retaining and protecting our rural values and will continue to seek protection for such values

METHODS

The RMU will support and advocate for continuing review of the District Plan that

- promotes establishing a subdivision standard of larger minimum lot sizes adjacent to the coast to protect the rural outlook
 - promotes the ban of 'balance lot' subdivision methods
 - promotes the establishment of "one-off" subdivisions rather than a process which allows for future smaller subdivision of existing lots
 - ensuring all subdivision activities and resource consent conditions are carefully monitored.
1. The RMU requests that it be fully consulted and involved over all proposals for subdivision within the coastal areas .
 2. Ngati Kuta is an affected party or interested party to all applications for resource consents, coastal permits, conservation concessions and similar processes related to subdivision, development and use of resources within our area and should be specifically recognised as such in all relevant Resource Management Act, Local Government Act, Historic Places Act and Conservation Act instruments.

(d) Housing and Landuse

ISSUE

The processing of building and land use consents is an ongoing concern. Consultation with Ngati Kuta is often ignored or substandard. Even where we are successful in seeing controls on design, size measurements and colour, either as a result of direct consultation or via conditions on consents, these are often not monitored. The visual impact of poor housing design when viewed from the sea is unsightly

POLICY

To ensure that all houses and dwellings/buildings blend into the natural and native surrounds to reduce visual impacts from land and sea

METHODS

The RMU will seek control, through consultation with developers or by way of submission to consent applications and reviews of the District Plan, to

- reduce the number of houses built upon the immediate coastline
- restrict the erection of two storied buildings upon the immediate coastline

- minimise the dimensions of dwellings and contain building shapes that do not compromise the natural outlook of the site
- negotiate appropriate colour schemes that blend into the surrounding natural environment
- restrict the erection of buildings above the skyline and upon ridges and encourage development which nestles into the lower portions of the coast
- discourage building development of prominent headlands
- general outlook of neighbouring properties
- full scope and nature of proposal
- adverse impacts to the environment values
- adverse impacts to cultural, spiritual and historical values
- quality of consultation with neighbours and their views of the proposal
- landscape planning
- archaeological assessments
- traffic matters including road/drive access
- proposed engineering of site

(e) Landscape Plans

ISSUES

Our native environment is precious and all efforts must be applied to maintain it and, in many areas, restore it. We intend to monitor activities to ensure the protection of native plant species and in particular mature native trees. Increasingly, residential lifestyles have seen the felling of mature trees to improve residents' views. This activity will not be supported by Ngati Kuta unless a tree is removed because it poses a threat to human life or safety

POLICY

1. Ngati Kuta will encourage the planting of native trees as policy within the area. Wherever possible this should include trees grown from eco-sourced local seed stock.
2. Ngati Kuta also aims to assist DOC and councils with new native tree plantings on reserve land throughout the area.
3. Ngati Kuta is opposed to the felling of mature native trees except where these pose a threat to human life or safety

METHODS

The RMU will seek to:

- ensure all subdivision and building consent proposals include a landscape plan.
- be involved in monitoring all landscape plan conditions included in resource consents to ensure all plantings have been carried out appropriately and good growth has occurred. The RMU will advocate for eco-sourced native species to be used at all times.
- up-skill and train Kaitiaki to lead planting programmes throughout the area
- establish our own native tree nursery to raise seedlings for planting throughout the area

(f) Farming

ISSUES

Dairy, dry stock, sheep, poultry, pig and all other animal farming activities within the area are currently reasonably low key. Generally farming activity is conducted by long-standing residents. However, contamination of waterways by stock and wandering stock on the road is a concern

POLICY

Ngati Kuta will promote and support safer and more environmentally friendly farming practices and work with farmers to monitor the impacts on the environment of farming activities and wandering stock.

METHODS

The RMU seeks to be involved in:

- assisting in education and advocacy for better land use and farming practices. This might include distribution of information fact sheets and quality testing of waterways
- monitoring wandering stock and resolving associated matters with farmers

(g) Access

ISSUES

Recent debate over the seabed and foreshore has raised concerns for both Maori and non-Maori. Ngati Kuta acknowledges the importance of providing assurance to everyone with an interest. Public access and recreational access must be secured for current and future generations and we intend to work with government to provide certainty to everyone.

POLICY

To create compulsory esplanade areas along the coast using such mechanisms as esplanade reserves, strips or conservation areas along the immediate coast. Appropriate access to such esplanade areas should also be provided. Ngati Kuta considers this should apply to all coastal properties upon subdivision consent regardless of allotment size.

METHODS

The RMU will negotiate with all coastal developers and continue to advocate for the protection of public access to the coast through the establishment of esplanade areas as part of all relevant subdivision proposals.

The RMU wishes to be involved in any coastal access strategies being developed by local or central government. We would prefer to be involved at the outset of such process.

(h) Exotic Forestry, Noxious Weeds and Non-Native Trees

ISSUES

Many exotic pine forests and non-native plantings exist within our area. Such forests and plantations have adverse impacts on biodiversity, soil quality, marine life and the overall visual outlook in the Bay of Islands at harvest time. Noxious plants which thrive amongst the non toxic plants are difficult to control

POLICY

Ngati Kuta is proudly pro-native, flora and fauna. We aim to enhance our natural and native environment with native trees and plants. We aim to identify problem plants within our area and develop strategies to overcome the issues they cause for our native environment.

METHODS

The RMU will seek to:

- assess and identify the various trees and plants located within the area
- develop strategies for the removal or eradication of problem trees and plants
- raise local awareness by distributing information fact sheets about non native and invasive plants to residents and visitors and promote native tree planting and programmes
- encourage native tree planting schemes with all new residents developing property
- discourage the felling of native trees such as Kauri, Totara, Pohutukawa, Rimu, Puriri unless for traditional customary uses

(i) Poisons, Pesticides & Weed Sprays

ISSUES

Adverse effects from poisons in the environment is not just an issue within our area, but most area throughout New Zealand. In some cases, very little is known about the full effect of poisons by the average household. Ngati Kuta is concerned over the amount of poisons being applied, where and for what purpose. Other issues include the safe storage and handling of poisons and the safety to people, domestic and native animals.

POLICY

To be as informed as possible about the poisons used in our area and to discover the best possible practices and solutions to adopt when poisons are applied within the area

METHODS

- assess the impacts that poisons have on our environment
- promote safety precautions and best practice for minimising the effects that poisons can have on the environment, wildlife and humans
- to research the types of poisons available and where poisons must be used, promote use of those poisons better suited to our environment and the wildlife species within our area
- assess application methods and techniques best suited for our environment
- work with Northland Regional Council, DOC and other relevant agencies to identify the best possible practices when using poisons within the area
- promote pre-monitoring assessments to identify scale of infestation (rodents)
- promote post monitoring programmes after poisoning and/or pesticides have been applied

2.4.3 Island Management

ISSUE

The many islands which lie within the area are tino toanga, extremely precious. The interaction of Ngati Kuta, both past and present generations, have identified the unique values of the islands. They have spiritual, cultural and historic importance for us.

We acknowledge the ownership rights of the Crown and various private owners. We also acknowledge that the Crown has empowered the Department of Conservation with management responsibilities for our islands. After two years of discussion, looking at and considering all the evidence and with widespread consultation, we, including Patukeha, in partnership with DOC and the Guardians of the Bay have decided to eradicate pests on the islands with an aerial drop of Brodifacum (DOC) and mainland trapping(NRC), followed by island maintenance programmes (DOC). The success of this plan is evident on the islands already pest free and regenerating. Our hapu are taking advantage of the projected employment opportunities.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta will be fully involved in all decision-making and implementation regarding future island policy and management.

METHOD

Ngati Kuta will work with all relevant parties and in particular the Department of Conservation to ensure all taonga and unique values of our islands are protected, enhanced and maintained. We aim to prepare and carry out strategies and management plans with those parties that implement our collective objectives to achieve greater quality of the islands.

(a) Urupukapuka

Urupukapuka is the largest Island within the area and hosts the largest number of visitors. One commercial land-based operator resides on the island, there is one private owner and the balance (and largest portion of the island) is in Crown ownership, managed by Department of Conservation.

We have identified several issues that require further planning:

- sewerage disposal
- pest control
- native fauna and flora restoration
- public amenities
- tourism control
- wahi tapu protection
- native bird nesting protection

(b) Okahu

To be reviewed.

(c) Waewaetorea

To be reviewed

(d) Motukiekie

Motukiekie Island is now in private ownership. We are saddened that such a jewel has fallen out of public ownership and aim to ensure the same does not happen again with any of the other islands.

We intend to work with Government to create a policy whereby priority is given to reclaim the ownership of private land holdings when and if they become available for purchase. Ngati Kuta intends to work with the owners of Motukiekie and include them in management planning.

(e) Moturua

Moturua island is primarily Crown Land administered by DOC, however three prominent private titles exist here. Moturua has a significant historical background, both from pre-colonisation times and since (for example its association with the NZ Army, as a hospital etc). This island is the second largest within the area and attracts many day-visitors by boat and hikers who enjoy the native island walk track.

Several issues must be addressed to enhance the island's native values:

- pest eradication
- removal of offending non-native trees and weeds
- track upgrading and maintenance
- public safety
- public amenities
- protection of wahi tapu

(f) Motuarohia

Motuarohia or Roberton Island is another island comprising of Crown Land administered by DOC and privately owned land. This island also holds values of significance to cultural, history, spiritual and early European settlement. The unique features of this island include three lagoons and natural bird nesting areas. Visitor interaction is common as DOC have a 'look out' platform which affords visitors a full view of the whole area.

Our focus will be to protect these unique values and enhance the native outlook of the island through:

- pest eradication
- protection programmes for nesting birds
- removal of offending non native trees and weeds
- providing for public safety and public amenities

(g) Motukokako

Motukokako or 'the hole in the rock' is, of all the islands, our most precious. It remains in Maori ownership and is currently a prime attraction used extensively by the tourism industry. Motukokako is a national and international landmark and holds cultural, spiritual, historic, and ecological values.

Ngati Kuta intend to develop strategies and management plans for Motukokako, including:

- commercial royalties
- reintroduction of the kokako
- native restoration programme

- use and interaction of the island

(h) Poroporo and Other Small Islands

The discussion of the small islands-Poroporo, Motuoi, Motutara, Rangiatea, Motungarara, Te Nunuhe, Pakatahi, Kuiamokimoki, Mahenotiti, Tawiriwiri, Motukauri, Te Ao; and toka- Oturori, Toka Te Kauri, Toka Otarepo, Nga Toka Te Kuru, Nga Toka Tikitiki, Motu Titi, Motu Hikurangi, Toka Hikutangi, Nga Toka Kiekie, Raepaoa, Nga Toka Parangi, Nga Kiri Parauri, Toka Okurariki, Toka Karuri, Toka Otawake, Toka Orarua, Toka Hoanga, Uruhope, Toka Motu, Nga Toka Raraka, Toka Rahirahi, Kapurarahurahu, Ohope, Toka Rerewai, Orerewai, Orerewainui, Toka Hikuru, Toka Hikuro, Paparoa, Whakaripia, Pukoni, Toka Rahirahi, and others will be reviewed. We intend to apply to have our traditional names for these islands and toka included in national maps. E.g Shag Rock is actually Toka Okuia and it has its own whakapapa, apart from the birds which sometimes sit on it. Hat island is Orerewai and it has its own whakapapa besides its shape.

2.5 RAWEKE IRA TANGATA | Genetic Engineering

ISSUES

Genetic engineering is a hot topic. The pros and cons continue to be debated and the full nature of such activities is yet to be identified. We realise that the bug free and large vegetables and fruit we buy have been genetically modified for years but we need to keep track of what changes and additions have been put in to our food, plants and animals. Ngati Kuta will not promote or endorse genetic engineering, modification and/or scientific research for any purpose within the area.

We will however, endeavour to monitor up-to-date information and scientific evidence regarding genetic engineering and review our stance should scientific breakthroughs pose positive and safe methods for use and development. Our native environment must be fully protected from such foreign modifications. One way is to plant natives sourced from our own ngahere, not from commercial outlets where plants from other areas and countries may be bought.

POLICY

1. Ngati Kuta supports a GE Free area as much as possible.
2. Any consideration of release of any genetically modified organism within the area of Ngati Kuta should require a full and open process for consent.
3. Full consultation with Hapu and the public will be taken before any consent application will be considered.

2.6 TAPOI | Tourism

ISSUES

The tourism industry continues to grow and we acknowledge that local businesses depend on such activities which provides them with revenue and an economic base for the community. Russell township is a clear example of such activity and Ngati Kuta understands the importance of supporting these local ventures.

Russell is the 'rural-urban hub' of the area and it services the wider Te Rawhiti and Waikare areas. One of the unique values of the Bay of Islands is the nature in which activities are contained. For example, Russell lies at one end of the area and has been developed to accommodate day and overnight visitors with restaurants, motels, shops and local history. This is not a dissimilar role to which Kororareka was designated by our tuupuna in the early days of European contact when it was demarcated as a "free-trade zone" for the servicing of whaling and sealing ships and later the first waves of European immigrants.

Te Rawhiti lies at the opposite and most eastern end of the Bay of Islands and yet it has hardly been developed at all, apart from small pockets of housing. The Te Rawhiti area is still one where a rural, natural environment and character prevails. It is this very essence or value that should be maintained and we believe that the rural character or outlook promotes the natural and native values of New Zealand. As such is one that benefits tourism, residents and small business owners.

The islands and adjacent undeveloped aspects of the coastline are very precious jewels within the area and are the prime attraction for tourists. Such jewels require the uppermost respect and care.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta will work with the Department of Conservation and other agencies responsible for the protection of the islands and the coastline to ensure that the values for which tourists seek out our area are appropriately protected.

METHODS

The RMU will:

1. promote back-to-nature type tourism and related activities that preserve and maintain the rural character and undeveloped nature of the Te Rawhiti area in particular and the Bay of Islands generally and will advocate for these values to be preserved wherever possible.
2. The RMU will actively participate in assessing the nature and impacts of all concessions applied for with DOC and local government reserves.
3. The RMU will monitor all developments and activities for their impact on the rural character within the area, and in particular the eastern Bay of Islands. The RMU will continue to advocate for activities which are compatible or preserve these values.
4. The Maunganui Bay area with its new Wreck will require close monitoring because of more visitors who will need toilet facilities and such out there. Hapu monitoring, electronic and physical, will be addressed.

2.7 HAU TAKIWA | Air Resources

2.7.1 Telecommunications

ISSUES

With cellular phones and other electronic telecommunication technology designs¹ becoming ever more advanced, the demand for better transmission technology looms. The Bay of Islands has many mountain ranges that often cause disturbance to reception quality. Installation of telecommunication towers seems likely and such devices have in the past been a topic of debate in some communities. Ngati Kuta remain open-minded about such developments, however we insist that careful planning and management of such mechanisms is essential.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta will assess all applications for activities involving or concerning telecommunications on a case-by-case basis. Ngati Kuta is not necessarily opposed to responsible development concerning telecommunications but will adopt a precautionary approach pending full assessment and analysis of each case.

METHODS

Ngati Kuta requests that the RMU is involved at the earliest possible opportunity in the preparation or design of applications for activities involving or concerning telecommunications. We request the RMU be supplied with all available information

¹ For example: radio towers, cell towers etc

relating to each activity to allow the RMU to assess applications. The RMU assessment will include, but is not necessarily limited to, the following factors;

- visual impacts
- height, width and length
- noise
- adverse electronic magnetic impacts
- road access infrastructure for servicing
- disturbances to the native and natural environment
- commercial environmental levy.

2.8 WHAKATUPATO MO TE KATOA | Public Safety

2.8.1 Rural Fire Control

Ngati Kuta will support both the Russell and Te Rawhiti fire brigades to provide a rural fire response adequate for protection of life and property.

Te Rawhiti Fire Brigade
Fire Chief:

Rana Rewha
Hauai Bay

s 9(2)(a)

Northland 0184

Ph: **s 9(2)(a)**

2.8.2 Civil Defence

ISSUES

Much of the area of Ngati Kuta is relatively remote and, given its coastal nature, is susceptible to natural hazards and emergency events. In the event of an emergency, it is essential that the community is aware of established processes for responding. Traditionally, our marae is the natural focus point for any community action in the face of any calamity.

POLICY

Ngati Kuta supports and endorses the work of those agencies responsible for managing civil defence emergencies. In the event of emergency, Ngati Kuta will provide any practical support possible and will develop with those agencies emergency contingency plans should the marae be inaccessible.

In the event of a natural disaster or civil emergency, the Te Rawhiti Marae is the registered meeting place for residents to gather when that place is appropriate to the emergency. A Civil Defence Plan is being formed by Henare Cook and Robert Clendon. Rana Rewha is the contact person for Civil Defence

Te Rawhiti 439 Trust (Marae Reserve)
Te Tawa Iti Bay
221 Rawhiti Road
Northland 0184
(**s 9(2)(a)**)
Mr Joe Bristowe - Chair

Rana Rewha
Hauai Bay

s 9(2)(a)

Northland 0184

Ph: **s 9(2)(a)**

2.8.3 Noise Control

ISSUES

Noise and unruly behaviour related to vehicles are growing concerns within the area, especially on unsealed roads and beaches. The unsealed road often tempts unacceptable driving techniques.. Summertime festivities also attract late night drinking along beaches which brings music from car stereos, often into the early morning hours. Increased helicopter traffic is becoming more of a nuisance to residents, has an increasingly adverse effect on the natural character of the area and rotor down draft stirs up debris.

POLICY

The RMU will monitor activities and request that agencies implement restrictive controls to reduce noise pollution within the area

METHODS

1. Appoint a local noise control officer to work through the correct legal process
2. Promote tighter controls over the establishment of helicopter pads and other landing places through iwi initiated conditions in the resource consents process
3. Raise public awareness around noise control issues.

PART TWO

ROOPU MOANA | Fisheries Management

Manager Moana: Robert Willoughby



Hauai Bay, Te Rawhiti, low tide. This photo shows the lack of sea grass, once plentiful, and the dozens of small dead pipi lie in and on, clay silt under the sand. Roopu Moana and Roopu Whenua are looking for help with research. This is the state of the beaches along the unsealed road which Far North District Council has ignored for years. FNDC is responsible for the road. The hapu must follow up the countless requests for a sealed road they have made over the last 3 decades.

The Ngati Kuta Charitable Trust is the mandated authority for Ngati Kuta Hapu ki Te Rawhiti. This Hapu Management Plan is not a substitute for consultation with Ngati Kuta. This work is copyright. No use of this work is permitted without the prior written consent of the copyright holder. ©

1.0 THE FISHERIES MANAGEMENT UNIT

Our **Fisheries Management Unit** is responsible for the management and administration of our Roopu Moana plan and policies and is currently developing its foundations.

1.0.1 This unit is made up of two teams, Commercial and Customary. Each team manages and administers different portfolios, but operate together in developing and administering the plan.

1.0.2 Te Tiriti o Waitangi

This plan will be refined over time as progress is made against tasks we have set ourselves. It is our commitment to the principles enshrined in the Te Tiriti O Waitangi which has produced an inclusive plan where responsibility is shared between ourselves, other hapu and all other users of this rohe and the resources within it.

1.0.3 Our Customary Rohe

The customary rohe is on page 119.

Ngati Kuta has had seasonal fishing in Ngati Wai and at Wiwiki. These customary boundaries were fluid and based on discussed and agreed rights and responsibilities.

We reiterate that we recognise the overlap between our rohe and that of other hapu and iwi to our south, north and west. These overlaps result from our shared whakapapa, histories, intermarriages, alliances and conquests. We prefer to think of these as areas of shared or common interest rather than as areas of conflict. We, along with Patukeha, reaffirm our ahi kaa and hau kainga status and the customary managerial outcomes of this status, that is, that seasonal and species fishing rights are the right of ours to give. We accept the ahi kaa and hau kainga status of other hapu and the customary managerial outcomes they have towards us.

1.1 ROOPU TAURANGA IKA | Customary Fisheries Team

This team is operating and has developed policies and processes with which Ngati Kuta intend to manage our customary take of fish and shellfish stock. These policies and processes have been presented to officers of Min Fish. Discussions are to be held with them to build our relationship and develop our customary kaitiakitanga and sustainable management of fish stocks. Our customary kaitiaki are all registered with Min Fish and are actively managing the Customary portfolio.

1.2 ROOPU HII IKA ARUMONI | Commercial Fisheries Team

This team is being developed. This portfolio has significant economic issues to be considered including tourism, recreational fishing and the commercial fishing industry. Much of the work that has to be done requires a wider input from

commercial and recreational stakeholders. All of these interests significantly impact on the sustainability of our fish resources.

1.3 Impacts on Waterways

Consideration has to be given to land-based developments that may impact on the waterways and coastal marine environment. For example the impact of housing, substandard roading and pine forests all have adverse effects on the coastal environment and wildlife food chain.

1.4 The Politics of Fisheries

The political issues surrounding fisheries assets are complicated. However our teams will continue to pursue appropriate policies and processes which will satisfy the objectives of this plan and those of other interested groups.

2.0 Fisheries Management

- 2.1 Ngati Kuta acknowledges the potential of customary management tools to enhance sedentary species such as mussel, pipi, scallops, kina, paua, etc, and the limitations of these tools in effectively managing mobile finfish stocks.

Ngati Kuta also acknowledges that large-scale fisheries management decisions and objectives have a major impact on our ability to harvest mobile finfish stocks for customary use and fish gathering for our whanau.

For our kaimoana we consider that large-scale fisheries management decisions in Quota Management Area (QMA area number one) where our rohe area is included should be focused on maintaining robust fish stocks for all species in which we have an interest.

- 2.2 Because our plan is evolving we have not identified all issues of concern to us, nor to have developed policies on all issues. Therefore, we have developed a set of “baselines” or minimum standards to be set at the level of stopping the destructive reduction of our fish stocks and our marine and coastal environment. These baselines may be:

2.3 Baseline (Principle) 1:

The kaimoana is plentiful

Our objective is that fish stocks which provide our kaimoana are to be managed so the fishery is always above the biomass required to produce maximum sustainable yield (Bmsy).

2.4 Baseline (Principle) 2:

Ika Taonga are very plentiful

Our objective is, for species which are particularly treasured, ensuring the stock is managed significantly above the biomass required to produce maximum sustainable yield (Bmsy).

2.4.1 Species in which we have an interest

- Ururoa hammerhead shark

○ Mango	shark
○ Albacore	Tuna
○ Swordfish	marlin
○ Matata	red snapper
○ Parrot fish	
○ Cod	Pakirikiri
○ Moke	
○ Parore	Mangrove fish
○ Pakarua/whi	stingray
○ Koheru	mackerel
○ Kokiri	leatherjacket
○ Ika paihau	red mullet
○ Pakirikiri	spotty
○ Wheke	octopus
○ Yabby	prawns
○ Barracuda	Mangaa
○ Kotore	sea anemone
○ Limpets	

2.4.2 Species that are particularly treasured

○ Papahu	dolphin
○ Tohora	whales/orca
○ Tamure	snapper
○ Ara ara	trevally
○ Tarakihi	
○ Gurnard	
○ Porae	
○ Maomao	
○ Takeke	piper
○ Warehunga	kingfish
○ Kanae	mullet
○ Kahawai	
○ Patiki	flounder
○ Hapuka	
○ Uai	herring
○ Koura	crayfish
○ Kina	
○ Kutai	mussels
○ Paua	
○ Tio	oysters
○ Tipa	scallops
○ Pipi	
○ Tuatua	
○ Pupu	periwinkle
○ Kawiriwiri	large periwinkle
○ Karengo	seaweed
○ Papaka	crab
○ Tuna	freshwater eel
○ Ngaroa	eel

2.5 Baseline 3

Marine Protection, Marine Reserves and mataitai

- 2.5.1** As a Treaty partner, Ngati Kuta reserves the right to have first option at implementing a customary management tool that allows for the gathering of kaimoana for customary and food gathering purposes.

Ngati Kuta view marine reserves as a confiscation of possible sites for the implementation of customary Maori management tools such as mataitai, taiapure and rahui. As tangata whenua we believe we should not have our choices limited by the Department of Conservation locking up prime fishing areas within our rohe as no-take marine reserves forever

Until all of our customary areas have been identified and suitable tools applied to achieve our objectives we do not accept the Crown imposing area controls within our rohe which could prevent or limit customary take, or our choice of areas for this take.

If, after a reasonable amount of time, a marine reserve fails to achieve its stated objectives, it should then revert back to normal status to provide for the needs of Ngati Kuta and other hapu. The markers for this baseline must be developed and we welcome any feedback and input they may have

Every marine reserve or customary fishing area that is implemented undergoes a test to determine whether or not it would have an “undue” impact on commercial fishers’ ability to catch their quota within the Quota Management Area. This test implies there is a limit on the total amount of area which can be given marine reserve or customary management status. Eventually, it will not be possible to have a marine reserve or customary area implemented without exceeding the SAE (significant adverse effects) test threshold. This is where a reserve is imposed with some exemptions such customary fishing. commercial fishing is excluded but public may boat and swim there, but not fish. This is defined in the NZ Coastal Policy Statement section 33 & 34.

Issue

- 2.6** This has effectively created a race for space between Maori customary management areas and the Department of Conservation. It also has the potential to create a race for space between hapu in the same Quota Management Area.

This race is unfair because the Ministry of Fisheries have failed to give effective management to customary tools since the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992. Had the Government fulfilled its obligations, the customary aspect of the settlement would be far more progressed. The Government’s failure to implement the customary regulations in a timely fashion have unfairly handicapped Ngati Kuta, while the well resourced Department of Conservation has had no such constraint.

A more transparent and inclusive process is required for marine reserves. There needs to be a full analysis of the objectives, costs and benefits of a marine reserve. As tangata whenua Ngati Kuta should be given an opportunity to apply customary management tools to achieve the same objectives without losing the area to a no-take marine reserve.

The Implementation Path

As a Treaty partner Ngati Kuta and Patukeha reserve the right to have first option at implementing a customary management tool which allows for the gathering of kaimoana for customary and food gathering purposes.

Until all of our customary areas have been identified and suitable tools applied to achieve our objectives we do not accept the Crown imposing area controls within our rohe which could prevent or limit customary take, or our choice of areas.

For other hapu claiming customary usage in our rohe moana, these inland and adjacent coastal hapu must identify and support their areas according to our customary controls. A more transparent and inclusive process is required for marine reserves. There needs to be a full analysis of the objectives, costs and benefits of a marine reserve. As tangata whenua Ngati Kuta should be given an opportunity to apply customary management tools to achieve the same objectives without losing the area to a no-take marine reserve. If, after a reasonable amount of time, a marine reserve fails to achieve its stated objectives it should then revert back to normal status to provide for the needs of Ngati Kuta, Patukeha and other Hapu.

3.0 Fisheries Act 1996

Ngati Kuta acknowledges its role and responsibilities as Kaitiaki within the Act. Ngati Kuta also acknowledges the role of Min Fish to work with Ngati Kuta to enable input and participation of Ngati Kuta on all fisheries matters affecting the rohe with particular regard to kaitiakitanga and our rights to manage customary harvest of the fishery.

3.1 References

- a Part 3 Fisheries Act 1996, Clause 11 Sustainability Measures
- b Clause 11A Fisheries Plans
- c Clause 12 Consultation
- d Kaimoana Customary Regulations 1998

4.0 Capacity Building

4.1 Our Fisheries Management Unit is responsible for the management and administration of our Roopu Moana plan and policies and is currently developing their foundations. This unit is made up of two teams, Commercial and Customary. Each team manages and administers different portfolios, but operate together in developing and administering the plan.

4.2 This plan will be refined over time as progress is made against tasks we have set ourselves. It is also our commitment to the principles enshrined in the Te Tiriti o Waitangi. It is an inclusive plan where responsibility is shared between ourselves, other Hapu and all other users of this rohe and the resources within it.

The Management Structure of the rohe moana ki Raukaumangamaunga

Issue

5.1 The rohe is determined as areas where Ngati Kuta traditionally fished. Ngati Kuta wishes to continue customarily fish in these areas. In doing so, Ngati Kuta realises that this management plan has to be inclusive of all hapu.

5.2 Coastal hapu lived from the sea. It was their food cupboard. Their role was to manage the fishery on behalf of others. Each hapu would open and close seasons in their area, determine access of their own and other hapu, and the species and quantities to be taken. Hapu who wished to fish would seek permission from the hau kainga before fishing commenced and often the hau kainga would accompany the fishing expeditions. This was the way the fishery was managed, an organised process of sustainable harvesting.

5.3 Despite changes in the way the fishery is harvested now, Ngati Kuta will continue to use the same guiding principles it traditionally used to protect the fishery in its rohe. Ngati Kuta will support all hau kainga in their rohe where they live.

Ngati Kuta wishes to continue its customary fishing rights in two areas, other than its own rohe, as its gazettelement clearly shows. It will continue to discuss its wishes in the same way that it will discuss the seasonal fishing rights of other hapu in the Ngati Kuta/ Patukeha Ipipiri rohe.

The Implementation Path

5.5 The Principles of customary exchange Such interchange of customary rights are carried out according to principles:

- A Respect hapu authority and lore for each rohe
- B Seek permission to access the rohe to customarily harvest
- C Access shall follow the process of lore/law to customarily harvest
- D Apply conservation methods to manage the fishery sustainably
- E Access to the fishery does not carry access to the land
- F The rights are reapplied for annually

5.6 The Method

- Work to enhance the mauri of the fishery by working collaboratively with other hapu
- Understand that kaitiakitanga is an inclusive process and coastal hapu share close relationships to each other and the fishery
- Promote the formation of a Kahui made up of a Kaumatua/kuia appointed from each coastal hapu
- Ensure the Kahui represents hapu who hold ahi kaa within the management area
- Support hapu to appoint its own permit issuers for their rohe ahi kaa
- Shall include permit issuers including Kahui members to be registered as kaitiaki for their rohe ahi kaa as part of the management area
- Encourage permits to be issued by the hau kainga for their rohe and not for other hapu rohe
- Assist the Kahui to play a guiding role in bringing issues affecting their rohe to the table and that these issues are worked up into projects
- Work with hapu, agencies and other interest groups to provide support and assistance for projects

2.0 KAITAKI

Ngati Kuta has formalised a collective of kaitiaki who are responsible for the administration of Roopu Moana of this plan. All kaitiaki have been appointed by Ngati Kuta Hapu and are under the general direction and control of Ngati Kuta.

2.1 The collective is identified as Ngati Kuta Hapu Fisheries Management Unit and is the point of contact for all matters pertaining to Roopu Moana.

2.2 The Fisheries Management Unit is a “hands on” working group and is responsible for the everyday administration of Roopu Moana. Their primary role is to:

- 1 Administer the plan
- 2 Facilitate the daily affairs
- 3 Manage customary fisheries
- 4 Gather information
- 5 Consult all approvals with the Hapu
- 6 Issue customary fisheries permits
- 7 Initiate legislation

ROOPU AHU MOANA | Fisheries Unit

Kaumatua

Matutaera Clendon

Kuia

Margaret Della Hartwell JP

Customary Fisheries Kaitiaki & Permit Issuers:

Della Snowden Hartwell

s 9(2)(a)

Hikurangi 0184

s 9(2)(a)

Francis Hepi

s 9(2)(a)

Hikurangi 0184

s 9(2)(a)

Contact

Russell Hook

s 9(2)(a)

Hikurangi 0184

s 9(2)(a)

s 9(2)(a)

Robert Willoughby

s 9(2)(a)

s 9(2)(a)

3.0 TAURANGA IKA ME NGA TIKANGA TUKU IHO | Customary fisheries and traditional techniques

3.1 Ngati Kuta traditions and lifestyle are primarily based around our water resources. The fish and shellfish stock are extremely precious therefore preventative measures will be taken to ensure the absolute well being of the moana.

3.2 Traditional fishing techniques have been forced to stop, due to legislation. Daily fishing was never a method practised by our whanau mai rano as it is seen as a method of depleting fish stocks. Instead, seasonal fishing was practised and once the fishing season closed, seasonal hunting of birds and wild pigs would begin. Preserving or smoking seasonal catch would keep the hapu in food stores until the next fishing season. Certain fish species were hunted at different times depending on plentiful supply and when spawning began and ended.

3.3 With the introduction of European fishing legislative methods, we have seen fish stocks deplete significantly. The recreational daily fishing system is one that allows set amounts of fish species to be taken.

3.3.1 We would like to see stricter management of the daily take. Many other protection methods have been recommended such as marine, taiapure and mataitai reserves, however seeking an agreement on the different options remains unresolved.

3.3.2 Rahui are effective methods of protecting all aspects of marine life. A rahui can be short, medium or long term dependent upon the desired objectives. A rahui provides flexibility and is an ideal tool especially within the Bay of Islands as we have so many different interest groups. For example, areas can be shut down for fishing or for shellfish gathering while the daily take of shellfish or fish would be allowed in other areas or the take of a certain species can be restricted for a specified season or quota limits imposed.

AIM

To discuss and negotiate the reintroduction of our traditional style of fishing, such as rahui methods and incorporate them within modern legislation or by new legislative processes to ensure that maximum sustainable levels are maintained.

METHOD

- 1 Review and reduce the current recreational daily take permitted within the area
- 2 Customise legislation specifically pertaining to recreational fisheries within Ipipiri (BOI)
- 3 Review the current seasonal dates for scallops and initiating new seasons of other delicacy species
- 4 Raise awareness and promote the benefits of rahui
- 5 Seek the overall protection objectives of the wider community
- 6 Assess and develop rahui proposals for:
 - 1 no fishing areas
 - 2 no shellfish taking areas
 - 3 protected species areas
 - 4 dolphin safe havens
 - 5 full (no take) closures

- 6 seasonal closures (breeding times, low stocks etc.)
- 7 species quota (limits on species)

4.0 ATAWHAI I TE MOANA I Water Management

4.0.1 Ngati Kuta survival and culture is based largely on our water resources and for many generations, we have fished the waters as the primary part of our staple diet. This tikanga continues today and we hold much knowledge of the rohe, water conditions and marine wild life.

4.0.2 With a growing commercial interest in the marine resources, Ngati Kuta insists that better methods of sustaining, in particular, the fish and shellfish stocks is required. Growing water tourism activities and increased recreational interaction also requires assessment and stricter methods of management initiated to protect enhance and maintain our conservational inheritance and clean water quality.

4.0.3 Our management objectives are based on the benchmarks of this plan. We aim to provide for developments that allow public and recreational users to interact with the resources and fishery for commercial users providing the activities are environmentally sustainable for all users. With growing concerns regarding treated sewage discharge, stress to wild fish species and the other adverse impacts that commercial and recreational activities create, strict management practices will be promoted.

4.0.4 Key Issues affecting Water Quality

- 1 Coastal land based development impacting and changing the seabed and foreshore
- 2 Recreational use of the waters increasing
- 3 Increase in water based tourism activities
- 4 Commercial fishing and aqua marine farming activities
- 5 Sewerage and refuse disposal
- 6 Management of moorings, marinas and wharves
- 7 Recreational water safety and compliance
- 8 Overall environmental and fisheries compliance
- 9 Lack of a cohesive foreshore management plan
- 10 Import/export of sand onto beaches
- 11 Adverse impact of pine pollen on shellfish beds

The issues are complex and unfortunately they do impact negatively on our coastal environment.

4.1 RANGAHAU MOANA | Marine research

Ngati Kuta is very excited about the future possible research developments which have been and could be established within the area. Our unique water resources offer unlimited opportunities to learn more about the underwater world. At present two baseline studies are being completed showing past and present stocks in Ipipiri. Stock counts of shellfish and fish will be undertaken to create a database for Ngati Kuta to work with.

ISSUES

Changes in the water environment are significant and under researched

- 1 Fish numbers and shellfish quantities are unknown. Current practices assume fish stocks will always be plentiful
- 2 All types of fishing and their overall impact on stocks is unknown
- 3 Sea grass areas where small fish breed are declining
- 4 Invasion of star fish and their impact
- 5 Mud fish migration to deeper waters
- 6 decline in seaweed
- 7 impacts on wild fish species through tourism
- 8 impact of silt from land developments including roads on the seabed and sea life
- 9 water quality unknown
- 10 commercial aqua marine farming effects

AIM

To establish a database to quantify fish stocks, flora and fauna, shellfish, and to compare these results against what is currently known.

METHOD

- 1 Initiate a stock count of shellfish, flora and fauna and fish species
- 2 work with Min Fish and NRC to develop the methodology and implement the survey
- 3 Correlate information and trends for invasive species and their impact
- 4 Identify good practices for tourism interaction to protect the well being of the wild fish species for all to enjoy
- 5 Gather information about aqua marine farming and its suitability and identify potential areas (if any)
- 6 Initiate a silt build up or sedimentation assessment of the sea bed and pin point the source
- 7 Train Ngati Kuta together with professionals to carry out the survey
- 8 Establish a Ngati Kuta database of and from the survey findings
- 9 Establish regular Ngati Kuta operated water quality testing

5.0 HII IKA ARU MONI | Commercial Fishing

5.1 Aapure Moana | Marine farming

The issues surrounding Marine Farming are significant. Contamination, visual and other environment effects associated with aquamarine farming activities are often a topic of debate.

- 1 Oyster farming is a popular commercial activity within the Waikare Inlet and provides local employment, however serious contamination factors have seen many of these farms close. For all of these negative factors, Ngati Kuta sees that Marine Farming has economic potential and benefits for our area and nationally, but care is needed.
- 2 Seabed and Foreshore issues are being debated and are yet to be resolved. We anticipate such resolve could be some way off, so ownership and usership is in limbo.
- 3 Very little is proven about the impact of aqua farming and the causes and effects it has on our marine environment. This needs to be determined by area and species.

POLICY

- 1 Until research has gathered and assessed information, Ngati Kuta does not support the establishment of any new farms until proper planning can be initiated and quantified.
- 2 Ngati Kuta does not support inshore marine farming because of its visual impacts
- 3 The contamination from sewerage and boats pollutes farm waters and sea beds
- 4 The imposition of farms on beautiful coastal areas will have negative impacts on tourism
- 5 Impacts to recreational and customary use will be severe
- 6 Environmental and lifestyle impacts
- 7 Lack of infrastructure and planning for inshore marine farming

5.2 Submerged Farming

Our preferred choice is offshore deep sea submerged ranching. This is a method that requires further investigation. Ngati Kuta would like to see sound business and environmental models created to ensure farming activities are carefully managed.

AIMS

To ensure environment protection, heritage, conservation and the well being of wildlife and to balance these values with commercial interests and local and recreational users.

METHODS

- 1 Assessing and identifying the full adverse impacts that farming has on the environment and native wildlife
- 2 Determine the capacity of sustainable farming that the area can manage
- 3 Identify the types of farming suitable for development within the area
- 4 Identify areas suitable for development
- 5 Determine a set number (maximum) of areas for farming
- 6 Identify a maximum area size limit

- 7 Negotiate an allocation of the set number of areas for use and economic development by Ngati Kuta
- 8 Initiate an Environment Levy payable by the aqua farms to be held in a local fund for re-distribution on research and environment maintenance

5.3 HII IKA ARU MONI | Commercial Fishing

- 5.3.1 Continuous commercial fishing in the Bay of Islands has impacted on fish stocks. Areas where schools of trevalli and tarakihi were plentiful are now emptied. Nevertheless commercial fishing is part of our community and plays an economic role, locally and nationally.
- 5.3.2 It should also be noted that Maori hold a large interest in the commercial quota.
- 5.3.3 Maori also fall into the category of recreational fishing when they catch kai moana for their household. So like all other fisherman any adjustment to recreational take would affect them as well.
- 5.3.4 Charter fishermen have undertaken their own daily take standards which is lower than the allowable recreational take. Whilst we applaud the initiative it does highlight the need for alignment across all user groups.

ISSUES

- 1 Stock depletion is our primary concern. Practices using purse seining, pair trawling, drag net fishing and some set netting have taken out large quantities of fish.
- 2 Some commercial practices do irreparable damage to the seabed and breeding stocks.
- 3 Fishing is an industry from which people earn their living so large quantities of stock are always going to be fished
- 4 The Bay of Islands is a popular fishing area particularly for recreational fishermen.
- 5 Reducing recreational limits will have a negative response from the public
- 6 despite current recreational limits, tonnage taken out continues to increase
- 7 Rules surrounding customary take are inconsistent from area to area

AIM

- 1 That the minimum sustainable yield (MSY) levels be significantly increased to allow fish stocks to recover. Ngati Kuta takes a position of "more fish in the seas". With increasing demand for fishing, fish stocks must be allowed to recover and grow if all user groups are to profit in a sustainable way.

METHOD

- 1 Commercial fishing operates 5 km off shore from Cape Brett. Some commercial quota is allocated for the inner BOI. Ngati Kuta would like this limited to quota allocation of crayfish, bait fish and long lining limited to 50 hooks.
- 2 Commercial fishing methods be modified to minimise collateral damage on by-catch and seabed.
- 3 Work with Min Fish and NIWA to monitor the commercial take so that the MSY levels are carefully managed.

- 4 Get a better understanding of the commercial fishing industry to see if some cross over opportunities with aqua farming are possible.
- 5 Work with local fishing groups on conservation methods and sustainable practices
- 6 Work with recreational users and charter fishing groups on bag and size limits
- 7 Ban dredging for scallops but not free diving
- 8 Provide training to customary permit issuers on how to manage permit quantities and public relations

6.0 HAPU ROOPU ARATAKI | Hapu Economic Opportunities

Ngati Kuta by tradition is a fishing people. We have lived off the sea for many generations. Many of our whanau have been involved in commercial fishing and tourism for periods of time. Our goal is to create wealth through employment for our community, however with low fish stocks and significant changes in the water environment; commercial fishing is becoming a marginal business.

Our approach to economic opportunities has to change. We must understand more about our environment and fish species in order for us to create profitable commercial activities that are sustainable into long term employment opportunities. Effective management and planning can only come after proper research has been completed. Ngati Kuta aims to work closely with Min Fish, DOC, NIWA, Tertiary institutions and other parties to identify the issues and structure a cohesive plan for this.

ISSUES

- 1 No income from water based activities and lack of capital to interact commercially
- 2 Lack of capacity to investigate commercial potential
- 3 Lack of commercial interaction and knowledge of commercial industry
- 4 No research of impacts from current commercial activities and measures of sustainability
- 5 No commercial database

AIM

Determine the potential of commercial fishing and tourism whilst sustaining the environment, as a sound economic base for job creation

METHOD

Step One

- Research effects from existing commercial activities
- Cross examine research information against stock count results
- Identify strengths and weaknesses from results
- Identify best approach to future planning of recreational and commercial fisheries management

Step Two

- Develop a plan for recreational fishing, commercial fishing and aqua marine farming that ensures a sustainable environment and balanced fish stock management
- Build capacity to support the plan

Step Three

- Establish the structure to enable the plan implementation
- Implement the Plan
- Ongoing research and monitoring
- Investigate new initiatives i.e.: land based farming/nurseries

7.0 TUNA ME NGA KEWAI | Freshwater Fishing

ISSUES

- 1 Little known about our fresh water fish resources
- 2 Lack of human resources to fully engage in this role
- 3 The eels used to be plentiful in Wairoa and Tangatapu but they are not now
- 4 The freshwater crayfish need to be re- established.

AIM

To build our capacity and knowledge over time

METHOD

Monitor activities as they arise

8.0 HII IKA HAKINAKINA | Recreational Fishing

8.1 Hii ika Ture Arahi | Recreational Fishing Regulations

The daily taking of seafood is not a traditional method. Ngati Kuta understands the present methods of harvesting and would like to implement tighter regulations for daily harvesting of seafood within the area. Growing recreational activity suggests Ngati Kuta needs to review current regulations and the recreational take to ensure fish and shellfish are available for reasonable recreational consumption.

AIMS

Ngati Kuta aims to review the daily seafood take in the Bay of Islands and to recommend changes to the Recreational Fisheries Regulations (Amateur Fishing Regulations) 1986.

METHODS

- 1 Assess the current permitted daily take
- 2 Make recommended changes based on our knowledge
- 3 Obtain quantified data from Min Fish, DOC, NIWA to support our position
- 4 Implement rahui to conserve or sustain stock areas which are endangered
- 5 attract "buy in" from all user groups using factual data to support our reasoning
- 6 Public education about fish take and size limits

POLICY

- 1 That recreational take be tailored to our area and not be included in a national take which is based on different factors pertaining to different areas.
- 2 That traditional rahui methods be part of public education.

8.2 HII MAKO, MANGO, TAKEKETONGA | Game Fishing

We acknowledge the historical background and current local involvement and enjoyment that game fishing brings. For some this sport has become a recreational and commercial lifestyle. Whilst it is not necessarily an activity that Ngati Kuta supports due to its 'hunting for sport' type nature, we do understand the interest in this activity.

ISSUES

Our primary concern is the depletion or extinction of certain species and some areas where they are being fished.

Aim

- 1 To monitor the fishery to ensure that game fishing species do not come under threat of extinction or severe depletion.
- 2 To protect areas which are significant to their survival

METHODS

- 1 Identify methods of assessing the stock numbers
- 2 Identify areas such as breeding grounds and feeding grounds and develop a protection management plan
- 3 Promote tag and release as currently practiced
- 4 Work with game fishing community to ensure the fishery is sustained

POLICY

Ban trawling and/or fishing through the 'hole' at Motukokako (Piercy Island) and within 1km of here and the outer sides of the main islands

9.0 TAURANGA IKA | Customary Fisheries

- 9.1 Ngati Kuta already manages its customary fisheries take under Customary Fisheries Regulations.

We have established our own rules pertaining to customary take in order to sustain the shellfish stock. Ngati Kuta is serious about protecting all sea food stocks. We have implemented our tikanga to provide guidelines for our Ngati Kuta kaitiaki to follow. Our rules are currently being implemented by our kaitiaki; however we are unaware of the customary permit issuing practices of other Hapu kaitiaki. Our policies enable Ngati Kuta to monitor customary take practices to sustain the resources.

The issuing of customary permits is an ongoing concern. Communication between permit issuers from each Hapu has not been developed. Customary take is currently managed by the Kaimoana Customary Fishing Regulations 1998. Ngati Kuta has delegated this responsibility to authorised kaitiaki who issue customary permits according to these regulations.

ISSUES

- 1 No communication between Ngati Kuta kaitiaki and other kaitiaki in the rohe
- 2 Identify who issues permits for customary take in our area from outside

- 3 Identify the types and amounts of kaimoana being approved
- 4 Identify the areas where kaimoana is being taken
- 5 Identify where fishermen are landing their catch
- 6 Identify how kaitiaki inspect the catch when they land
- 7 Identify the inconsistencies in permit issuing
- 8 Identify the reporting processes

AIMS

- 1 To recognise each hapu kaitiaki in their own rohe
- 2 To engage with other kaitiaki to formalise good communication
- 3 To establish consistent practices and identify good working relationships to enable a comprehensive programme for customary take
- 4 Identify areas of cultural significance and Wai tapu
- 5 Monitor all fisheries activities

METHODS

- 1 Gazette the rohe moana
- 2 Establish a Kahui Kuia/Kaumātua in which each hapu with a customary interest in the rohe
- 3 Under Kahui direction, formalise a customary working group within nga hapu o Taumarere to ensure consistent practices are implemented
- 4 Monitor bi-monthly review of customary take
- 5 Review permitted take when necessary
- 6 Implement a sustainable customary fisheries management plan
- 7 Make recommendations to the Minister of Fisheries to establish rahui and other outcomes of our management plan
- 8 Train and equip kaitiaki to carry out their roles and monitor overall fisheries together with Min Fish
- 9 Develop working relationships with Min Fish and gain formal acknowledgement of Ngati Kuta/Patukeha authority as kaitiaki of their rohe
- 10 Recognise the authority of other hapu in their rohe and their role as kaitiaki hau kainga

POLICY

In collaboration with Taumarere review practices and upskill Kaitiaki with help of Min Fish.

Our current Customary Permitted Take practices to be reviewed.

9.2 KAUPAPA TAURANGA IKA MO NGATI KUTA | Customary Fisheries for Ngati Kuta

9.3 Set nets, long lines and Crayfish Pots

The following conditions shall apply when proposing to fish with the use of set nets, long lines and crayfish pots.

9.3.1 Set nets

Set nets must meet the specifications as identified in the Recreational Fisheries Rules.

Research: Section of the Recreational Fisheries Rules:

9.3.2 Long Lines

Long lines 25 hooks with ID tag

9.3.3 Crayfish Pots

Crayfish pots must meet the specifications as identified in the Recreational Fisheries Rules.

Research: Section of the Recreational Fisheries Rules:

9.3.4 Holding Pots

Holding pots may be used to store seafood providing the pot has an ID Tag attached to it identifying the date on which the permit was issued and the expiry date. The Kaitiaki will have a copy of the permit that allows the seafood to be stored in the holding pot.

9.4 ID Tags for set nets, long lines and Crayfish Pots

METHOD

For the setting of nets, long lines and crayfish pots set during the day or overnight the Kaitiaki must instigate the following procedure:

- Issue the applicant a permit
- Record the permit number, expiry date and expiry time on a plastic ID Tag in permanent ink
- Attach the tag to the net, long line or crayfish pot
- Advise what time that the applicant must return to the Kaitiaki the next day with his/her net
- Advise the applicant that the he/she must not remove or alter the ID Tag
- Kaitiaki removes the ID Tag once the applicant has returned with the net. The ID Tag on a holding pot must be returned to the Kaitiaki on the day the ID Tag expires

9.5 KAIMOANA CATCH AMOUNTS AND SIZE LIMITS

The following limits are to provide Kaitiaki with a guideline for the authorised take of each shellfish species. The kaitiaki will use their discretion to decide whether or not permits will be authorized to collect delicacy seafood for certain hui and also the catch amounts.

9.51 DELICACY SEAFOOD

- Scallops
- Paua
- Crayfish

Seafood Description	Catch Limits & Size
MUSSELS	Amount: <i>A Maximum of 2 Level 60 litre bins per permit</i> Size: <i>No Set Limit</i>

<i>KINA</i>	Amount: permit Size:	A Maximum of 4 Level 60 litre bins of Kina per No Set Limit
<i>PIPI – Cockles</i>	Amount: Rules Size:	The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries See Recreational Fisheries Rules
<i>OYSTER – Rock & Pacific</i>	Amount: Rules Size:	The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries
<i>SCALLOPS</i>	Amount: Size: Conditions:	A Maximum of 50 per permit Minimum Size of 4 Inches / 100 Mil Scallops may not be taken out of season
<i>PAUA</i>	Amount: Size:	A Maximum of 50 per permit Minimum Size of 4 Inches / 100 Mil
<i>CRAYFISH</i>	Amount: Rules Size: Conditions:	The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries Crayfish marching may not be taken and females carrying eggs may not be taken
<i>FISH – Hand Line/Rod</i>	Amount: Size:	Limit to permit issue
<i>FISH – Net or Long Line</i>	Amount: Size:	Limit to permit issue Net must comply with the Recreational Fishing Regulations

9.6 PROVIDING APPLICANTS WITH INFORMATION- The Document.

The Kaitiaki are responsible for providing all applicants with information relevant to their expedition. The following document, “Customary Fisheries Permit Terms and Conditions”, is a document that must be given to each applicant and must be held by the applicant with the permit.

NGATI KUTA CUSTOMARY FISHERIES UNIT Customary Fisheries Permit Terms & Conditions

Attention Applicant

When collecting seafood for customary purposes, the following rules and conditions shall apply. Failure to adhere to or uphold the rules and conditions may result in an investigation and/or formal complaint to the Ministry of Fisheries of any misconduct and/or other issues relevant to customary take.

- 1 The person applying for the permit accepts full responsibility for the conduct of all divers, boat owners and the total amount of catch

- 2 The applicant is also fully responsible for informing divers and boat owners of the conditions of the permit and the permitted catch
- 3 You must carry your permit and this information sheet on board your boat for the entire duration of your seafood collecting expedition
- 4 If there is more than one boat, the permit and information sheet must stay on board the boat that the applicant travels on and the applicant must inform the other boat/s of the area where they will be diving/fishing
- 5 Should the divers of the other boat/s be investigated by MOF while out diving/fishing, the boat owner will have the responsibility to escort MOF to the boat that carries the applicant and permit
- 6 If you are setting a net, long line or crayfish pot you must not alter or remove the ID Tag placed by the Kaitiaki. You must return with your net, long line and/or crayfish pot, at the stated time to the Kaitiaki
- 7 Should you be investigated by MOF whilst out diving/fishing you must cooperate with their officers.
- 8 If MOF question the permit in anyway, you should direct their officers to contact the Kaitiaki who issued the permit
- 9 You must collect seafood only in areas identified by the Kaitiaki/Permit Issuer
- 10 You may use dive bottles to collect seafood providing the Kaitiaki has identified this on the permit
- 11 You must not sell any seafood collected and/or collect the seafood for commercial purposes or use in a commercial kitchen/restaurant
- 12 Kaitiaki are authorized to count your catch upon your return to shore.
- 13 You must report back to Kaitiaki immediately upon return with the divers, the boats and owners and also the total catch
- 14 Your permit is only valid for one day which is the date stated on the permit

Caution: Whilst the applicant is responsible for the customary fisheries permit, the divers and the total catch you should be aware that, **if you take more kaimoana than stated on your permit, all the divers and boat owners will also become liable for prosecution** under the Recreational Fisheries Regulations and boat/dive gear may be confiscated.

9.7 AUTHORISED HUI

Customary Fishery Permits can only be issued for the following hui

- Tangi
- Unveilings
- Weddings
- Birthdays
- Koha to other Marae
- Anniversaries
- Whanau Gatherings
- Wananga

9.8 KAITIAKI SUMMARY REPORTS

Kaitiaki are required to make out a summary report when seafood collectors return to the landing area with their catch. The Kaitiaki will estimate how much seafood has been collected and record the information so that Kaitiaki will be able to summarise each month the exact amounts of seafood that has been harvested.

NGATI KUTA CUSTOMARY FISHERIES UNIT			
Kaitiaki Monthly Summary Report			
SUMMARY FROM ____/____/____ TO ____/____/____			
Date Permit Number	Type of Seafood	Amount Permitted	Amount Taken
TOTALS			
Seafood Types	Total Amount Taken		
Date of Evaluation ____/____/____		Signed: _____	
(SAMPLE FORM ONLY)			

AIM

To better manage customary fisheries and encourage better practices and kaitiakitanga of the fish and shellfish stock

METHOD

- 1 Working with nga hapu o Taumarere to co-ordinate and better manage the Mana Moana resources and environment

- 2 Formalise a better communication network, working relationships and a who's who from each Hapu
- 3 Identifying who should issue permits
- 4 Establish a common set of rules on customary take

10.0 TAPOI | Tourism

Tourism is the economic heartbeat of the Bay of Islands. Most of this activity is centred around Paihia and Russell. The attraction is the heritage and conservation beauty that makes up the Bay of Islands. Tourists are interested in nature and the natural beauty including the "Hole" Motukokako which is a major tourist attraction. They also like to see wild life in their natural habitat. Tourism activities are numerous and seasonal particularly in summer as consumers migrate to the Bay of Islands for their holidays. For this reason, our management plan will aim to include the preservation of this unique heritage and the sustainability of it in harmony with commercial and recreational users.

11.0 RUKU KAIWHAKAMAHI | Small Fishing and Dive tour Operators

Small charter fishing operators are small businesses who provide a service to recreational fishers and tourists. They operate for profit and employ staff. We are aware, that some local operators have adopted rules to encourage sustainability of fishing stocks. This is encouraging and an activity that Ngati Kuta supports.

ISSUES

- 1 Increasing numbers of small charter operators
- 2 Externally based operators who migrate into the Bay of Islands increasing (from Whangarei, Auckland)
- 3 Increasing recreational users and take

AIMS

- 1 Work with local operators to sustain fish stocks and protect our marine environment
- 2 Identify rest zones for fish and seek agreements with operators not to fish there
- 3 Clarify current practices and fish sizes that operators allow their customers to take
- 4 Gain better understanding of the industry and how it functions
- 5 Identify a plan that encourages good business outcomes for the operator whilst sustaining the stocks and natural environment
- 6 Create an operator's database

METHOD

- 1 Engage in discussion with local operators
- 2 Identify differences and work through the issues to seek good outcomes
- 3 Develop good working relationships and communication processes
- 4 Education and raising awareness with customers on environmental causes and affects i.e.:
 - (i) Appropriate disposal of litter
 - (ii) Only taking what you can consume
 - (iii) Monitoring and discouraging waste
 - (iv) Size and quantity limits

12.0 KAIWHAKAMAHI TAPOI | Large Tour Operators

Fullers is the largest commercial cruise boat operator in the Bay of Islands followed by Kings and Dolphin Discoveries. All operators employ their own standards and practices for their business. Our role is to ensure that their standards are consistent with our plans in taking care of the environment.

We understand the economic role they play for the area and the promotion of it. We would however, aim to identify how these large operators can re-invest in the protection and enhancement of the environment on which their business is heavily dependent.

The Implementation Path

ISSUES

- 1 Intruding on residential privacy
- 2 Reducing noise levels
- 3 Appropriate interaction with dolphins
- 4 Ad hoc beach landings
- 5 Sewerage discharge (see recommendations in section xx)
- 6 Oil and fuel spillage
- 7 Incorrect local history story telling
- 8 Hole in the rock royalties
- 9 Reinvesting in protection and enhancement of the environment
- 10 Issuing of dolphin watching licenses

AIMS

Engage with the operators to discuss our plans and issues

METHOD

- 1 Work with operators on their local history story telling and accuracy
- 2 Develop memorandum of understanding about privacy of our Marae and other Maori residents
- 3 Work with DOC and Min Fish to develop appropriate interaction with wild life and the environment standards.
- 4 Negotiate royalties as payment for intellectual property title and access for "hole in the rock" cruises
- 5 Develop a sewerage discharge unit with FNDC funded by environmental levies
- 6 Keep updated by MSA on oil spill recovery unit and it's method of operating and efficiency of recovery.
- 7 Develop succession plans for school leavers into employment over time.

POLICY

No sewerage discharge from operators boats into the water

13.0 ME ERA ATU MAHI | Other developments

13.1 Sewerage discharge

ISSUES

The discharging of treated sewerage from boat holding tanks into the waterway is an ongoing concern. Such activity will not be supported by Ngati Kuta as it contradicts the baselines of this plan. Although sewerage is treated, we believe treated sewerage does contaminate the waterways. Minor controls are currently in place whereby disposal is banned within the inlet. However greater control over dumping areas outside of the inlet must be identified and managed.

AIM

To develop land based holding tanks for disposal

METHODS

1. Assessing the current holding tank infrastructure within the area and identifying function problems
2. Assessing the impact that land based sewage will have on the land based resources
3. Identifying designated areas outward of the inlet for discharging
4. Utilising funds raised from the Environment Levy to upgrade existing land based holding tanks and to establish more of them

13.2 Underwater Power Cables

ISSUES

Underwater power cables have been previously laid within the area. The cable between Omakiwi in Te Rawhiti and Cable Bay on Urupukapuka Island remains unused and is now in a derelict state. New proposals loom whereby island residents of Moturua and Motukiekie Islands may apply for resource consents to lay new cables which will connect these homes to mainland electricity. Such development raises many issues and live wire instalments require strict controls to ensure public safety.

AIM

To minimise disruption to the seabed and environment including wild life and to protect public access and recreational interaction

METHODS

- 1 Assessing each application through the existing resource consent process and according to the benchmarks and methods of this plan.
- 2 Assessing the proposed activity against:
 - Impacts on the environment, wild life,
 - Cultural, spiritual and historical values
 - Impacts to public and recreational access and activities

13.3 Marine Patrol

ISSUE

Tourism activities, shellfish poaching, pollution and contamination factors are ongoing issues.

To date, solutions have not been identified and it has become evident that this is due to lack of finance. NRC, FNDC and MOF do not have the financial or human resources available to them to establish infrastructure and to employ full time rangers

AIM

To manage all activities to ensure the best possible protection of fish and wildlife species within the area.

To utilise Ngati Kuta kaitiaki to monitor or patrol activities

METHODS

1. Monitoring current activities within the area
2. Researching and assessing the impacts of tourism on the fish and wildlife

POLICY:

Recommendations

- *up-skill kaitiaki for patrol duties and forming a network with NRC, FNDC, DOC and MOF*
- *Manage the number of tourism licenses issued for use within the area*
- *Implementing traditional rahui methods of protection to protect and preserve fish and wildlife species by way of a “temporary closure” under section 186 of the Fisheries Settlement Act*
- *identifying the types of tourism activities for development within the area*
- *charging an annual environment levy for tour operators for beneficial use on environment enhancement within the area*

CHAPTER FIVE

NGA KUPU AAPITI | Appendices

APPENDIX I Roopu Workshops.....	138
APPENDIX II Ngati Kuta Hapu and the Founding Treaties	143
APPENDIX III Nga Pepa Whai Tikanga.....	144
APPENDIX IV Raupapa Mahi Moni.....	148
APPENDIX V Ngati Kuta and the Charitable Trust.....	151
APPENDIX VI Kupu Māori Glossary.....	154
APPENDIX VII Submission Process	159

APPENDIX I | Roopu Workshops

In May 2004, a **Workshops Wananga** was held at Te Rawhiti Marae. Participants broke into groups of their choice to submit ideas for the initial development stages of the Hapu Management Plan. This resulted in the establishment of various Roopu, with the following people putting their names forward. The opportunity for additional people to join in was allowed.

Kuia/Kaumatua

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| ➤ Te Waiohau Te Haara | ➤ Matutaera Clendon |
| ➤ Naini Rewha Hepi | ➤ Marara Te Tai Hook |
| ➤ Te Aroha Rewha Willoughby | |

Roopu Panui

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| ➤ Debbie Peacock | ➤ Lara Clarke |
| ➤ Mere Clendon | |

Roopu Putea

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| ➤ Maryanne Hooson | ➤ Sonia Hepi |
| ➤ Robert Willoughby | ➤ Marara Te Tai Hook |

Roopu Ture

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| ➤ Hana Ellis | ➤ Pouaka Hepi |
| ➤ Ida Hepi | |

Roopu Mahi Toi

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| ➤ Elizabeth Ellis | ➤ Glenys Papuni |
| ➤ Jolene Clendon | ➤ Rangi Hemara |

Roopu Maatauranga

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| ➤ Helen Harte | ➤ Glenys Papuni |
| ➤ Elizabeth Ellis | |

Roopu Ngahau

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| ➤ Russell Hook | |
|----------------|--|

Roopu Moana

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| ➤ Robert Willoughby | ➤ Ivan Snowden |
| ➤ Della Hartwell | ➤ Russell Hook |
| ➤ Francis Hepi | ➤ Charlie Rewha |
| ➤ Rob Mcpherson | ➤ Steve Matene |

Roopu Hauora

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| ➤ Mavis Heremaia | ➤ Rebecca Kareko |
| ➤ Sid Hepi | |

Roopu Whenua

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| ➤ Natasha Clarke | ➤ Ms Nathan. |
| ➤ Helen Harte | |

The Workshop Contributions

Mana Tangata

He Aha Te Mea Nui O Te Ao
 He Tangata
 He Tangata
 He Tangata

Mana Tangata nurtures the philosophy of our whakatauki, "What is the greatest thing in the world? It is people, it is people, it is people."

Identifies our views, aims and objectives regarding our human resources and how we intend to enhance and nurture our people.

Is about promoting healthy economical sustainable lifestyles within a Maori context.

For many years Ngati Kuta quietly and calmly got on with life in a way that ensured survival utilizing the natural resources found in the rohe. Community gardens and whanau groups fishing for local exporters were common within Ngati Kuta. Kaitiaki were employed by the local council as beach wardens to ensure the control of alcohol, rubbish, camping etc were monitored appropriately. This also included the taking of all shell and wet fish within the rohe.

Many whanau moved to urban situations to enhance their living circumstances and improve knowledge/experiences, however there were a small number of whanau that have never left the area and are still resident today.

Resident whanau have seen whanaunga move back to the area only to leave again in search of employment. Whole whanau units (*many instances including our Kaumatua/Kuia*) relocated to where the jobs were. The vision has always been to secure employment to enhance our whole living situation, encourage our peoples return to the rohe, and utilize these skills locally. In today's environment it has not happened in an organised way. The alternative has been the unemployment benefit coupled with seasonal work. Issues associated with this pattern are the cost of transport and distance road conditions, etc.

Our Hapu register identifies many skilled and qualified Tangata. They hold various roles within Ngati Kuta; however the lack of job opportunities and poor economics conditions continues to drive our people to urban situations. It is intended that Marae based workshops be held in our rohe where we utilise our Tangata skills in conjunction with our Kaumatua/ Kuia.

Manatangata seeks to involve whanau of Ngati Kuta in every way possible whether they be residents within Aotearoa or further a field.

Education

Te Manu e kai ana i te Miro
 Nona te Ngahere
 Te Mana e kai ana i te Matauranga
 Nona te Ao

Issues

- ✚ School closures, Travel distance and times for tamariki to attend school. Ngati Kuta Tangata being forced to leave the rohe to engage in courses. to up skill
- ✚ Te reo, tikanga, knowledge,
- ✚ Need for a sustainable life long seamless Education flow

Aim

- ✚ All Ngati Kuta Tamariki leave school with a qualification or a skill for employment
- ✚ Further education
- ✚ That Ngati Kuta children have access to information and participate in early childhood Education
- ✚ To develop education that reflects the needs of the hapu (i.e.) Ngatikutatanga, Te Reo, and tikanga.
- ✚ Marae based education
- ✚ To be able to access identified education
- ✚ To identify Tangata with special needs

Method

- ✚ To establish Marae based homework Centres
- ✚ To establish a data base of people resources in Education and facilities
- ✚ To establish a Ngati Kuta scholarship/ education fund
- ✚ To identify role models
- ✚ To plan establish individual education plans in conjunction with the child and supports
- ✚ Education promotion sex, Health promotion, obesity, budgeting, nutrition, quit smoking,
- ✚ Alcohol and drugs, Gambling Parenting, sexual orientation, relationships.

Employment

Ma Te Wahine
Ma Te Whenua
Ka Ora Ai Te Iwi

Issue

- ✚ Transport to get to employment outside of the rohe. Rural isolation and road conditions, Limited employment opportunities within the Rohe, Outside business moving in on our area Lack of Putea, Legislation changes (i.e.) black spots.

Aims

- ✚ To purchase a vehicle to allow Ngati Kuta Tangata to travel to and from employment out of the rohe.
- ✚ To develop strategies for the management of our rohe to keep employment all year round
- ✚ To develop business concepts that attract Putea to help finance other projects in our rohe
- ✚ Marketing – Raising the profile
- ✚ To work at developing job opportunities as the work is definitely here.

Method

- ✚ To develop and negotiate with services out side the rohe to provide Marae based training opportunities which meet the demands of the people, (i.e.) Driving, First aid, Diving, Landscaping, Maintenance of small engines.
- ✚ To negotiate contracts with government departments such as WINZ, DOC, etc
- ✚ To research and develop a business plan conducive to the are and environment.
- ✚ To utilize local avenues to promote the profile of the area for marketing purposes
- ✚ Establish a group to focus on local job opportunities, which reflect the interest of the people.

Arts & Crafts

Philosophy

To develop, promote, preserve the cultural expressions and traditions for Ngati Kuta hapu.

Issues

- ✚ Lack of resources
- ✚ Qualified tutors
- ✚ Marketing
- ✚ Vehicle to travel to collect resources and take for marketing
- ✚ Preservation of resources.

Aim

- ✚ To develop, promote preserve the cultural expressions and traditions for Ngati Kuta Hapu.
- ✚ To establish Ngati Kuta as a creative and dynamic hapu in the area of arts and crafts
- ✚ To promote traditional arts and crafts (i.e.) Raranga, Whakairo, Kowhaiwhai Waiata Kapahaka ,Rongoa Taonga
- ✚ Acknowledge contemporary arts by supporting students me nga tamariki, mokopuna
- ✚ Implement a strategic plan for the protection and preservation of resources (i.e.) Korari, and Taonga.
- ✚ To establish workshops for Raranga etc
- ✚ Set up a grant scheme for Ngati Kuta hapu students
- ✚ To meet with Kaumatua / Kuia to establish what resources were used existed and how they can be preserved
- ✚ Identify Ngati Kuta Taonga held in collections private or public in Aotearoa and other countries. Repatriate

Method

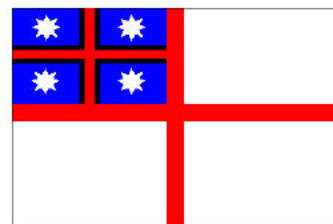
- ✚ To identify, support Tangata to become trained, qualified tutors in the area of Arts and Crafts.
- ✚ Hold Marae based Wananga for the purpose of Waiata revival in conjunction with Kaumatua/ Kuia and kapa haka groups.
- ✚ To identify, encourage support Nga tamariki who participate, attend contemporary arts.
- ✚ Develop a plan in conjunction with Doc, Kaumatua/ Kuia regarding the preservation and protection of Nga Korari and Taonga
- ✚ Plan and implement workshops according to requirements of tauira
- ✚ To work with identified Tangata to establish a Ngati Kuta database regarding Taonga being held in private and public collections in Aotearoa and overseas.
- ✚ To establish a process for the return of these Taonga in conjunction with Kaumatua/ Kuia.

APPENDIX II | Ngati Kuta Hapu and the Founding Treaties

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE & TE TIRITI O WAITANGI

The Declaration of Independence and Te Tiriti o Waitangi are founding documents of Aotearoa New Zealand. Ngati Kuta adheres to the intent of our tupuna in their desired partnership with the Crown.

Our tupuna Tenana signed the Declaration of Independence on 28 October 1835 at Waitangi. It is an international declaration that recognises the sovereignty of the Independent Tribes of Aotearoa New Zealand, and was witnessed by the Crown Resident. This was the forerunner of the Treaty of Waitangi. It has a flag to symbolise tribal rights to trade as independent nations, but has been ignored by NZ governments.



It was Rewiti Irikohe who later signed Te Tiriti o Waitangi for Ngati Kuta on 9-10 February 1840, at Waimate North. The Queen took 'all the rights and powers of sovereignty' over our land when our tupuna intended to give 'te kawanatanga katoa' – the government over their land, not Māori land. The Queen confirmed and guaranteed our 'exclusive and undisturbed possession of lands and estates, forests, fisheries and other properties', but sought an exclusive right to deal with Māori over land transactions. We were guaranteed 'te tino rangatiratanga' – the unqualified exercise of chieftainship over our lands 'whenua', villages 'kainga', and all their treasures 'taonga katoa'. Our tupuna agreed to give the Crown the right to deal with them over land transactions. The Crown gave an assurance that Māori would have the Queen's protection and all rights - 'tikanga' - accorded to British subjects.

The following extract encapsulates the feeling amongst our tupuna less than a decade after Te Tiriti O Waitangi. It is attributed to an anonymous chief of Ngā Puhi.

CHIEF OF NGĀ PUHI LETTER TO GOVERNOR GREY

"[We] went to the gathering at Waitangi ... [where] ... I signed the book [Treaty], but ... I did not hear that the purpose of that [Treaty] was to alienate our lands. What I heard was that the mana of the land was to the Queen but the land itself was to remain to us lest we be plundered by another nation – that the [Treaty] established the Englishman as a protector of the Maori people...."

From an original letter in Māori from a chief of Ngā Puhi to "the protector of the two peoples" 1848; A.F. McDonnell, MS Papers 151, Folder 7. Alexander Turnbull Library, National Library, Wellington.

APPENDIX III | Nga Pepa Whai Tikanga

Recording the Minutes

6 May, 2004

Kia ora e te whanau o Ngati Kuta Hapu.

Minutes of a meeting

What I have written here is not a put-down of anyone's skills in recording Minutes, nor is it nit-picking so please don't take it that way, this is just advice from a kuia who has spent years from my College days as a shorthand typist and doing secretarial work for umpteen organizations throughout my life and taught by very experienced public people!

As we have been working towards the setting up of our Hapu Management Structure, and everyone contributing towards its success, I think it is now time that our Minutes be written and presented in some semblance of order, a format which is consistent throughout our meetings.

Our records are going to be historical documents in days to come and I would like our books to be an example of the way we did our work, uniform and meticulous in detail and something of which our uri can be proud, so let's set a standard now!

There are going to be instances, which have happened already, where some of the authorities will require the viewing our minutes, or viewing certain resolutions (like the Maori Land Court/Bank/Companies Office). Thus, the way in which our Minutes are recorded following the established pattern, will give credence to our work.

I know we all have our own style of recording Minutes but there are one or two basic facts I would like to point out which I hope is taken in the spirit it is given and not as a criticism.

Format for Minutes

1.0 Agenda

An **Agenda** is always prepared for the meeting, one for Chairperson, one for Secretary, but for a big meeting, agenda may be written on whiteboard.

Prayer and mihi are not numbered on the agenda, and while it is an important part of all Maori meetings, it is not part of the business, but it can appear on the Agenda. No 1 is always Apologies and the rest follows on.

1.1 Attendance list to circulate

1.2 Opening prayer and mihi.

- 1 Apologies
- 2 Minutes of previous meeting (Date)
- 3 Matters/Business Arising
- 4 Correspondence,
 - Inward
 - Outward
- 5 Financial Report

- Accounts for payment
- 6 Reports – (like any Portfolio Reports for instance)
- 7 General Business
- 8 Next meeting

1.1 Attendance List

The attendance list that is circulated for signature is filed with the first **signed** copy of the relevant Minutes, which is **kept in our records/files**.

When Minutes are written, the names of those present can be typed as has been done in the past, except that Christian names should be written in full, but for the names of the mover and seconder of a motion/resolution, initials of the Christian name may be used, with the surname out in full. e.g. M Hook/H Hart, **not** MH/HH.

2.0 Recording of Minutes

Minutes are not a verbatim account of the meeting. They are summarized.

2.1 Apologies

Moved that apologies be sustained/accepted. Mover/Secunder
People are very fond of submitting names of those who did not actually apologise for not attending the meeting. These should be checked by the Chair.

2.2 Minutes/Confirmation of Minutes

The same format can be used for the Minutes which have just been read, or if circulated beforehand.

2.2.1 If they have been actually read out at a meeting, the following applies:

Moved THAT the minutes of meeting held (date) be confirmed as a true and correct record of that particular meeting. Mover/Secunder

2.2.2 If they were circulated beforehand and not actually read out aloud at the meeting, but everyone is satisfied that they were read out, then:

Moved THAT the minutes of meeting held (date) be taken as read and confirmed as a true and correct record of that particular meeting. Mover/Secunder

2.2.3 The Chair then signs and dates the original of the Minutes as a true record of the last meeting. To ensure that this is done, the following should be added on the bottom right hand corner of the last page of the Minutes.

Confirmed:

Date:

2.2.4 Minutes are recorded in the third person – refrain from using ‘we’ and ‘I’, even though you have taken the minutes. “.....I went to see the accountant..... I was nominated...etc

2.2.5 Name the person so that there is no doubt who went to see the accountant or who was nominated.

Another example, ‘We discussed the foreshore issue’ – ‘the foreshore issue was discussed by members.’

2.2.6 Be consistent with name recording: Glenys Rewha Papuni or just Glenys Papuni, -

I know it depends on who's taking the minutes, but maybe I can include a list in our Minutes File of the doubtful names. For example, Auntie Mary. Perhaps it is better to ask her how she wants her name recorded in the minutes - does she want to continue with the name Willoughby or Van de Hayden or the 3 names?? - Rewha /Willoughby/Van de Hayden??? Or Te Aroha Rewha Willoughby or what?? - better find out. I know different recorders will write down how they know her, but for the sake of consistency, we should stick to the same name throughout. It's good to record us by our proper names, like Te Atawhai Hall for Auntie Polly. We must remember, this is also a record for the information of all our uri coming up who are going to read these Minutes. They need to recognise the full names.

2.2.7 I think we have already established at a previous meeting that our full Christian names be recorded in the "Present" list and thereafter in the Minutes, just our initials then the last family name.

2.2.8 Omit the full stop after the initial of our first names - M space Hook, rather than M full stop space Hook - just a time saver.

Omit the hyphen for our double barrelled names – again, time saver.

2.2.9 Rather than bullet nga Take, it is preferable to either number them OR abc them, the latter is advisable. The reason being for quicker reference when a query arises two or three meetings down the track. e.g. Minutes Page 9, 3 (c), rather than refer to Minutes Page 9, 3 (then running your finger down the list to the third item).

2.2.10 In redoing the Minutes, I have numbered the pages consecutively, easier for quick back reference rather than shuffling pages round and looking for consecutive dates.

3.0 Correspondence

It is **Inward** and **Outward**, singular, not plural.

For Inward, abc the individual correspondence and for Outward, can be a continuation of the abc format.

e.g. Inward

(a)

(b)

Outward

(a)

(b) etc

4.0 Resolutions or Motions

4.1 A motion/resolution is a group of words which makes sense when taken out of the Minutes.e.g. minutes of one of our Hapu meetings.

Minutes received and accepted. M Heremaia/M Clendon

Okay, what minutes?? when was the meeting held??

Another one: Francis Hepi nominated. Now, you take that sentence out of the Minutes, so, he was nominated for what??

It should read: That Francis Hepi was nominated as a representative of the Ngati Kuta Hapu for the Te Rawhiti Marae Trustees.

Again, this is not a put-down. I could take other minutes from other organisations and find similar examples.

4.2 All motions/resolutions should begin with the word 'THAT':

That the minutes of meeting held (whenever) be confirmed as a true and correct record of that particular meeting. Mover/Seconder CD

4.2.1 The words "Motion Carried" can just be abbreviated to "CD" at the end of Mover and Seconder.

4.2.2 The motion/resolution can be separated out from the surrounds and bolded so that it is very obvious. It is the most important korero of that meeting because the organization has agreed on a course of action affecting that organization from then on. Only another meeting and another resolution can stop the one just passed, so it is very very important.

4.2.3 Sometimes the motions can be rather long, avoid starting a motion on one page and finishing it off on the next page. It is not likely to happen in our organisation, but I have known it to happen where a Resolution was interfered with and words added to the Resolution on the next page which completely altered the whole meaning of the thing. Again, watch that.

As a follow-up contribution to what I've written here, I do not mind editing all of our Minutes from now on. Just e-mail them to me. This invitation is extended to any organization which needs this help. I ensure confidentiality. And a free service – at the moment!!

Aroha mai e te whanau, e hara tenei i te kowhete i te riri ranei, heoi ano he aroha ki a tatou ano, me te whakaaro ki a haere tika tonu a tatou mahi i nga kaupapa kei mua i a tatou, no reira, nga manaakitanga ki a koutou katoa,

Aroha tino nui,
Marara Hook,
Kuia.

APPENDIX IV | Raupapa Mahi Moni Financial Procedures

Financial Procedures for the Ngati Kuta Hapu Treasurer and for all Roopu financial reports.

Fundamental Processes to be followed or BOOK KEEPING

1. **Credit what comes in and Debit what goes out.** There are programmes available to do this. Choose one which notes the above.
2. **Keep a record** of the details of your transactions, on your PC and in a Cash book are probably best so the written one can be circulated at the meeting. Just coming along to the meeting with a Bank Statement is not sufficient, details are required.
3. **A financial report**
 - a) is a report of transactions **in detail** from one meeting to another.
 - b) It shall include **a running balance** from one meeting to another
 - c) It shall record details of monies received and **proof** of your payments (dockets, receipts etc) leaves no doubt in anyone's mind, how the money received was spent.
4. **Monies recording**
 - a) Committee authorised payments is the only reliable system.
 - b) A receipt for payment is still required, not the cheque butt as a payment receipt
 - c) Issuing receipts on the spot for incoming money is important. The receipt book must be at a meeting
 - d) The receipt book must be where there are fundraising activities in the future or out-of-meeting times
 - e) When **loose cash** is given by hand, it shall be **counted it in front of the person** not counted later, **no matter who it is.**
 - f) In the event that a Committee cheque for a certain amount is received which is less than the total on the cheque, then the remainder must be banked and be recorded
5. **Presentation of Financial Report**
 - a) Set out report as simply as possible, in straightforward language, so it may be read and comprehended by lay people. Thus terms such as, 'excess income over expenditure' might be read as, 'Total received, total spent, leaving a balance of
 - b) **Bank Statements**
 - The Bank Statement is not the whole proof of transactions
 - The Treasurer **must show how that last balance was arrived at.**
 - **Detail of each transaction is important.** e.g. Bank Deposit \$100, what does that mean, where has that come from, who gave it??
 - It is the **detail** of each transaction that matters.
 - c) **Reconciliation Statement**
A Reconciliation statement is a statement detailing the difference between the last bank statement and the Financial Report to be presented to the meeting. **Reasons:**
 - Sometimes Bank Statements don't balance with the Financial Report as there may be outstanding cheques which have not yet been presented to the Bank

- a deposit/s the day before the meeting may have been made before the a Bank Statement print out
- The Deposit Slip should be presented as proof, or the cheque or receipt in the reconciliation statement

6. **Cash Book**

The Cash Book and the programme on P/C are a detailed record of all monies received.

- a) The Cash book shall be available and on display at each meeting for inspection by any hapu member
- b) A basic 3 column Cash Book has:
Receipts 1st column, Payments 2nd column and Balance 3rd column.
- c) Receipts: (particulars in Cash Book)
 - Date received money
 - Particulars (from whom)
 - receipt number
 - amount in Receipts column
 - There will be other receipts appearing in Bank Statement which do not come through the Committee, e.g. Interest. It is not necessary to make a receipt out for Interest. This must be added to the Financial Report
- d) **Payments:** (particulars in Cash Book)
 - Date made cheque out
 - Particulars (to whom)
 - (cheque butt number
 - amount in Payments column.
 - Deduct Receipts from the Payments for Balance
 - payments in the Bank Statement which do not come through the Committee, e.g. Bank charges, cheque book fee, are recorded in the Financial Report.

7. **Payment Vouchers**

A Payment voucher is the record where the payment receipts are stapled. The voucher also details the payments.

- **Writing cheques out of Committee shall not occur.** In an emergency, pertaining to hapu business and not to personal business, where a payment must be made, then the chairperson and other executive members – Secretary included- and the signatories should they not be executive members, must be notified by the Treasurer and all must agree to the transaction.
- **Always ask for a receipt** – as is the practice of business people. Non-business people known to the Treasurer must always be insisted upon for a receipt should they not be forth coming in the first place.
- The Treasurer **must keep at reluctant issuers.** The scrappy nature of the paper does not matter, as long as there is
 - a date
 - amount
 - what it's for
 - a signature
 that's the proof to the Committee.

8. **Cancelled cheques**

Should there be a reason for some reason a cheque being cancelled e.g. an error in writing it,

- strike two lines right across it with the words 'cancelled' inside the lines.
- **keep it to show the auditor.** Do not destroy.

9. **Cancelled receipts**

Should a mistake be made writing out a receipt and it is necessary to cancel it,

- strike two lines across both the top receipt
- and the duplicate,
- write 'cancelled'
- **keep both the top receipt and the duplicate** to show the auditor. It has been known for the top copy to be given to the person being receipted and, at a later date, the duplicate copy of a cancelled receipt made out for a lesser amount. Avoidance of this possibility is mandatory.

10. **Present Income Categories**

Donations
Grants
Resource Management Unit administration fees

11. **Present Payments categories:**

Administration: all purchases for stationery, printing, receipt book, envelopes, stamps, paper clips, stapler, staples, folders, printer cartridges, Marae koha for meetings, insurance, Runanga fee -detailed with receipts for each in Financial report.

- Resource Management Unit

12. **Future Income/ Payments Categories**

- Roopu Whakatakoto Korero
- Roopu Rangaputea and Panui
- Roopu Whenua
- Roopu Moana
- Roopu TahaTangata

13. **Running balance**

The balance at the end of the last meeting must be the opening balance for next meeting. If it is not then a statement must explain the difference with evidence.

M Hook
June, 2004

APPENDIX V | Ngati Kuta and the Charitable Trust

The Trustees of the Charitable Trust

Chairperson – Russell Hook

Secretary – Mary Mokaraka

Treasurer – Marara Hook.

Issue

To ensure that the hapu activities conform to the Charitable Trust requirements

Method

To form a Charitable Trust

Policy

Clause 5.0 describes the Hapu's possible economic enterprises which will benefit everyone and therefore be eligible for charitable tax status.

5.0 Objectives and Purposes

The objectives and purposes shall be to establish, promote, advance, and support the **spiritual, cultural, educational, economic and social** well being of the people of the hapu Ngati Kuta ki Te Rawhiti.

- 5.1 To promote the **wairua** of Ngati Kuta.
- 5.2 To develop support, protect and promote **traditional knowledge and expressions of culture** for Ngati Kuta.
- 5.3 To establish **educational and cultural facilities** to benefit Ngati Kuta and the wider community. Wider community should be hapu, iwi, tauiui within New Zealand.
- 5.4 To promote, advance and participate in **educational initiatives** for Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.5 To establish, promote, support, advance, participate in **social initiatives** for Ngati kuta and the wider community.
- 5.6 To establish, promote and support **health initiatives** – services and programmes- for the urgent improvement of health for Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.7 To establish, promote and support **economic initiatives** : tourism, creative endeavours, sustainable fisheries, sustainable agriculture, sustainable forestry, and any entrepreneurial initiatives including joint ventures with other iwi, that will benefit Ngati Kuta and the wider community now and for the future.
- 5.8 To promote the use of the **spectrum**, to do with ICT (Information Communication Technologies), radio, television and others to benefit Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.9 To participate in the benefits of all **resources** above and below the ground, the sea, the foreshore and water for the betterment of Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.10 To establish and promote the concept of kaitiakitanga of all **intellectual property** in Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.11 To liaise, inform and be open and receptive to **other charitable works and institutions** and organisations within the wider community for the benefit of Ngati Kuta and the wider community.
- 5.12 That all of these objects and purposes shall be for the benefit of Ngati Kuta and the wider community and none shall change the charitable nature of this Charitable Trust.

The extract below from the Trust order explains the hapu's financial requirements and the range of economic ventures able to be developed to still qualify for charitable status

IN ORDER to carry out the objectives and purposes for which the Board or Trust is established, the Trustees may exercise all or any of the following powers and authorities:

6.1

FUNDS: To see, accept and receive donations, subsidies, loans, grants, endowments, legacies and gifts, whether in money or in kind or partly in one way and partly in the other for all or any of the objectives of the Trust.

6.2

RECORDS:

- a) To keep and complete a good and true record of accounts and all donors and donations to the Trust Fund.
- b) To keep a proper written record of all decisions taken and business transacted at every meeting of the Trust in a proper Minute Book.
- c) To keep a register of members- to be kept by Roopu Panui

6.3

AUDITOR: To appoint an auditor or suitably qualified person to provide a true and fair view of the Trust's affairs. Such inspections should be carried once per year and no later than 75 days from the end of the financial year (March 31st).

6.4

SOLICITOR: To appoint a solicitor to conduct its legal affairs, as and when required.

6.5

TRANSPARENCY: To advertise all known activities of the Trust and to keep its affairs transparent for the beneficiaries by whatever means the Trustees deem appropriate.

6.6

MONEY/PROPERTY LOANS: The Trustees shall not lend money nor lease property or assets at less than current commercial rates, having regard to the nature and term of the loan, to any person (as defined in the Income Tax Act 1994):

- a) who is a Settlor or a Trustee of the Trust; or
- b) who is a shareholder or director of any company by which any business of the Trust is carried on; or
- c) who is a settlor or Trustee of a Trust that is a shareholder of any company by which any business is carried on; or
- d) if that person or that company and the settlor or Trustee or shareholder or director referred to in any of the foregoing paragraphs of this Trust Deed are associated persons (as defined in the Income Tax Act 1994).

6.7

BUSINESS: Subject to clause 6.6 of this Deed, to purchase, lease, exchange, hire or receive gifts or otherwise acquire, any real and personal property and any rights and privileges for the purposes of its business and in particular but without limiting the foregoing, any land, buildings, easements, machinery, plant, stock in trade, motor vehicles and vessels of any description.

6.8

LEND/INVEST :Subject to clause 6.6 of this deed, to lend or invest money with security to any person, body, or society whether incorporated or not, on such terms which the Trustees deem reasonable and proper, and/or to guarantee the performance of any such contracts by any such persons but only in furtherance of the objectives of the Trust.

6.9

SHARE INVESTING: Subject to clause 6.6 to engage in any business or transaction capable of being conducted so as to directly or indirectly to benefit this Trust and thus the beneficiaries and for that purpose to take or otherwise acquire and hold and dispose of shares in any company having objectives similar to those of the Trust.

6.10

NATIONAL/LOCAL GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS: To enter into any arrangement with any government or local authorities supreme, municipal, local or otherwise that may seem conducive to the Trust's objectives or any of them and to obtain from any such government or authority any rights or privileges and concessions which the Trust may think it desirable to obtain and carry out, exercise and comply with any such arrangement, rights, privileges and concessions that may comply with the Trust's objectives.

6.11

TRUST PROPERTY: To acquire, construct, maintain, alter, restore, improve, develop, work, manage, carry out or control, any buildings, works or property or do anything which will advance, directly or indirectly, the objectives of the Trust.

APPENDIX VI | Kupu Māori Glossary

Some of these words have several meanings but the ones here have been chosen to suit this document and in some cases are not direct translations.

By Marara Te Tai Hook

References: PM Ryan and HW Williams, 1971 Edition. Te Matatiki (TM)

Pronunciation	Every vowel in a Māori word is sounded
The vowel a	is pronounced as in <i>far</i> . Avoid all trace of the flat <i>a</i> as in <i>hat</i> . e.g. Wai-ta-ngi
The vowel e	is pronounced like the <i>ea</i> in <i>leather</i> or in <i>ten</i> . Avoid the double sound of the vowel as found in <i>hay</i> and <i>hee</i> . e.g. raw-he for rohe not roe-hee.
The vowel i	is equivalent to the vowel sound in the English word <i>mink</i> or <i>hint</i> . e.g. <i>mink</i> to sound the <i>i</i> in rimu or hint to sound the <i>i</i> in pipi
The vowel o	is pronounced as the English word <i>awe</i> . Avoid all trace of the English pronunciation of <i>oh!</i> This is the most abused vowel sound when one is pronouncing Maori words, take great care with it. Not poe-whiri. e.g. paw-whiri for powhiri OR maw-ana for moana
The vowel u	is pronounced like the double <i>o</i> in <i>moon</i> . e.g. hoo-l for hui. Avoid saying it like the <i>ew</i> in <i>few</i>
ng	is a softer sound than in English, especially with regard to the <i>g</i> . The sound is similar to the middle <i>ng</i> in <i>singing</i> . (Tuhoe iwi have a different pronunciation)

Groups	Roopu
Administration	Roopu Whakahaere (W30 conduct business)
Advisory Group	Roopu Whakatakoto Korero
Artistic Skills/Culture	Roopu Mahi Toi
Communication	Roopu Panui/Roopu Whakaatu
Economics Advisory Group	Roopu Arataki (W14 lead/guide/conduct/point out) Roopu Arataki (W14 lead/guide/conduct/point out)
Education	Roopu whai matauranga
Finance	Roopu Rangaputea
Fisheries Unit	Roopu Ahumoana
Law Unit	Roopu Ture
Resource Management Unit	Roopu Hapai Puna Taonga Roopu Hapai Puna Taonga
Social Services	Roopu Taha Tangata
Sport	Roopu Hakinakina (W32, sport, enjoy oneself)

Kupu Māori | Māori Translated

atea	<i>the area from the gate to the steps of the wharehui</i>
hapu	<i>(W36 - section of a large tribe, secondary tribe), collection of related families within one tribe</i>
hikoi	<i>(W50 - step), used by Ngati Kuta RMU when inspecting a site development</i>
hui	<i>(W66 - congregate, meet, assemble) gatherings, discussions</i>
iwi	<i>(W80 -nation, people), collective of hapu, tribe</i>
kaitiaki	<i>(Kai W86 - prefix to transitive verbs to form nouns denoting an agent - tiaki - guard, keep) guardian, caretaker</i>
kaitiakitanga	<i>absolute sovereign guardianship, caretaking</i>
karakia	<i>(WP98 - charm, spell, incantation). In modern terms applied to public worship, prayer.</i>
kaumatua	<i>(W106 - adult, old woman or man), respected elders (male or female), holders of knowledge and life experiences</i>
kaupapa	<i>(W107 - plan, scheme, proposal), topic, subject</i>
koiwi	<i>(W128 - bone), human remains</i>
kuia	<i>respected older women, holders of knowledge and life experiences</i>
mana	<i>(WP172 - authority, control, influence, prestige, power etc), status, dignity, respect, derived from God</i>
mana moana	<i>traditional status, rights (including ownership and responsibilities in respect of water, physical and natural resources within their traditional marine territories), derived from the ancestors and God</i>
mana whenua	<i>traditional status, rights (including ownership and responsibilities in respect of lands, physical and natural resources within their traditional land territories), derived from the ancestors and God.</i>
manaaki	<i>(W172 - show respect or kindness to)</i>
manaakitanga	<i>the act of showing respect or kindness to, encompassing care</i>
marae	<i>(W180 - enclosed space in front of a house, courtyard, village common) Modern usage for whole building complex and surrounding grounds.</i>
matua	<i>male parent, father or uncle including any male cousin of one's mother, father, aunts or uncles</i>
moana	<i>(W204 - sea, lake) In our case, salt waterways.</i>
mokopuna	<i>(W208 - grandchild, child of a son, daughter, nephew, niece etc)</i>
Nga hapu o Taumarere	<i>Collective of hapu within the Taumarere district/region of Eastern Bay of Islands</i>
powhiri	<i>(W300 - wave, beckon anyone to come in, welcome) Modern usage for official welcome</i>
rangatahi	<i>incorrectly used to describe 'young people'. (W323 - fishing net). From a popular saying 'Ka pu te ruha, ka hao te rangatahi' - 'When the old net is worn and lying in a heap, use a new net to catch fish,' comparison with young people being the 'new net.' It is preferable to use tai-tamariki, tamataane, tama waahine to describe young age groups.</i>

rangatahi rangatahi rangatahi	Children and grandchildren of the elders whose age groups range from young adults to elders, holders of modern techniques and technology.
rangatira rangatira rangatira	(W323 - chief etc, person of good breeding, well-born, noble), leader, inherent status, one who has the ability to keep the people together
rangatiratanga rangatiratanga	(W323 - evidence of good breeding and greatness), chieftainship including sovereignty, rights of self determination.
rohe rohe	(W344 - boundary) traditional domain, area, district or region of a tribe
taha wairua	spiritual side
take	(W370 - cause, reason, means, origin, beginning) topic, issue
tamariki tamariki	(W376 - child, opposed to adult), children within the age groups from young adult to newborn
tangata whenua	people of the land, those who hold mana whenua in an area.
tangi tangi tangi tangi	(W379 - cry, weep, utter a plaintive cry, fret) Modern usage - the formalities and procedures surrounding the demise of a person from the time of death to the burial. Often interpreted incorrectly as "the funeral day."
taonga taonga taonga taonga	(W381 - property, anything highly prized) Modern usage - valued resources (land, sea, rivers, springs, mountains), prized and priceless possessions both material and non-material.
taonga tuku iho	the above, handed down
Taumarere	place, district, region in Eastern Bay of Islands
taumata kaumatua taumata kaumatua taumata kaumatua taumata kaumatua	place where the male elders sit to receive and welcome all visitors and guests to the marae. 'Taumata' is a Taitokerau term as opposed to 'Paepae' used in southern areas.
Te Reo	the Maori language
teina teina	younger brother or male cousin of a male, younger sister or female cousin of a female
tikanga tikanga	(W416 - rule, plan, method, custom, habit, etc), customary and/or traditional correct ways of doing things, protocol, aspects
tuakana tuakana	elder brother or male cousin of a male, elder sister of a female etc)
wahi tapu	special and sacred place
wairua	(W477 - spirit, PM Ryan - attitude, mood, soul)
wananga wananga	(W479 - lore of the tohunga, occult arts), Modern usage - learning and educational seminars
whaea whaea	mother, aunt (including any female cousin of one's father, mother, aunts, and uncles)
whai korero	make a speech, oration, rhetoric
whanau	family group, extended family
whanaungatanga	kinship, relationship through whakapapa, bonds
whenua	land, placenta

Kupu Hou	New Terms
Acknowledgments	<i>Kupu whakamihi</i>
Adolescence	<i>Taitamariki</i>
Adults	<i>Nga hua kua pakari</i>
Air	<i>Hau Takiwa</i>
Areas of shared interest	<i>Te Wahanga ki nga Rohe</i>
Beginning or Introduction	<i>Timatanga</i>
Babyhood	<i>Whaanautanga</i>
Capacity Building	<i>Whakawhanuitanga mo te Hapu</i>
Childhood	<i>Tamarikitanga</i>
Coastal and Rural Management	<i>Kaupapa mo te Tahamoana me te Taiwhenua</i> <i>Kaupapa mo te Tahamoana me te Taiwhenua</i>
Company of persons/people	<i>Hunga</i>
Consent processing fees	<i>Utu mo nga raupapa mahi</i>
Cultural, spiritual and historical values, sites of cultural significance, whaitapu and archaeology	<i>Ahuatanga mo nga whaitapu</i> <i>Ahuatanga mo nga whaitapu</i> <i>Ahuatanga mo nga whaitapu</i>
Disabled	<i>Hunga hauaa</i>
Disputes	<i>Tautohe</i>
Environmental Levy Fund	<i>Taake mo te Taiao</i>
Employment	<i>Hunga Mahi</i>
Environment Management	<i>Nga Painga mo te Taiao</i>
Baselines (quality of water, etc)	<i>Nga Painga mo te Taiao</i>
From the womb	<i>Mai i te koopu</i>
Genetic engineering	<i>Raweke ira tangata</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	<i>✚ ira – life principle</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	<i>✚ ira atua – supernatural beings</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	<i>✚ ira tangata – mortals</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	<i>✚ raweke – meddle or interfere with</i>
Hapu Management Plan	<i>Whakatau kaupapa mo te Hapu</i>
Hapu Project Plan	<i>Whakararangi kaupapa</i>
Hapu Project Plan	<i>Whakararangi kaupapa</i>
Hapu Registration	<i>Rehita Ingoa</i>
Health	<i>Hauora</i>
Hospitalization	<i>Atawhai turoro</i>
Housing	<i>Whare noho</i>
Infirm	<i>Hunga turoro</i>
Knowledge repository	<i>He pataka Maatautanga</i>
Land Management	<i>Kaupapa mo te Whenua</i>
Mental health	<i>Oranga hinengaro</i>
Message from the Taumata	<i>Whakamarama mai i te Taumata</i>
Mission Statement	<i>Uaratanga (desires/values, also aims & objects)</i>
Occupational training	<i>Whakawai mahi (train/teach/practice)</i>
Operations	<i>Nga Take whakamahi</i>
Our Ethics	<i>O matou matatika (P44 TM)</i>
Overall Strategic Direction	<i>Tirohanga Whanui</i>
Post natal	<i>No te whaanautanga</i>
Protocol consultation	<i>Kaupapa hei whiriwhiri</i>
Public safety	<i>Whakatupato mo te katoa</i>
Resource	<i>puna taonga</i>
Resource consent	<i>Puna taonga hei tono</i>

application	<i>Puna taonga hei Tono</i>
Resource Consent	<i>Puna Taonga hei Whiriwhiri</i>
Consultation	<i>Kaupapa Taiao hei Whiriwhiri</i>
Restoration and preservation	<i>Whakahou me te Tiaki</i>
Recording Minutes	<i>Whakahou me te Tiaki</i>
Statutory Planning	<i>Nga Pepa Whai Tikanga</i>
Processes and Instruments	<i>Wahanga ki te Ture</i>
Strategic/strategy	<i>Wahanga ki te Ture</i>
The Process (W343 put in order, arrange etc)	<i>Rauhanga (W329 cunning, resourceful)</i>
Toddlers/infants	<i>Te Raupapa Mahi</i>
Tourism	<i>Te Raupapa Mahi</i>
Transport	<i>Nga kohungahunga</i>
Vision	<i>Tapoi (W384 be travelled round)</i>
Fishing Commercial	<i>Waka hari</i>
Fresh water fisheries	<i>Whakaaro Whakamua</i>
Hapu Economic Opportunities	<i>Hii Ika Aru Moni</i>
Game fishing	<i>Tuna me nga Kewai</i>
Marine Research	<i>Hapu Roopu</i>
Marine Reserve	<i>Arataki</i>
Ngati Kuta customary fisheries	<i>Hii mako, mango, takeketonga (W371 Bay of Islands swordfish)</i>
Recreational fishing	<i>Rangahau Moana (W323 see, search out, pursue)</i>
Recreational Fishing regulations	<i>Aapure moana (W13 patch, circumscribed area)</i>
Small fishing and Dive Tour Operator	<i>Tauranga ika mo Ngati Kuta</i>
Water Management	<i>Kaupapa tauranga ika mo Ngati Kuta</i>
Large Tour operators	<i>Hii Ika Hakinakina</i>
Other developments	<i>Hii Ika Ture Arahi</i>
	<i>Hii Ika Ture Arahi</i>
	<i>Ruku Kaiwhakamahi</i>
	<i>Ruku Kaiwhakamahi</i>
	<i>Atawhai i te moana</i>
	<i>Kaiwhakamahi Tapoi</i>
	<i>Me era atu Mahi</i>

APPENDIX VII | Submission Process

The Ngati Kuta Hapu ki Te Rawhiti Management Plan was presented as our first draft. Ngati Kuta Hapu distributed this plan to initiate consultation with parties.

We welcome your submissions on any aspects or issues reflected within this plan.

There are three methods of submission.

1. Write them out and post or email them.
2. Make verbal comments by telephone to the following people.

Michelle Elboz

s 9(2)(a)

Te Rawhiti

s 9(2)(a)

Northland 0184

s 9(2)(a)

Helen Harte

s 9(2)(a)

s 9(2)(a)

Kohimarama

s 9(2)(a)

3. Post to the Ngati Kuta website.

www.ngatikuta.maori.co.nz

All submissions should clearly identify:

- What Section of the Plan you are submitting to
- What Index Number your submission relates to
- What your issue is
- Who you are
- Postal address
- Contact phone number(s)
- Email address
- I would like to talk to my submission in person ☐

Example:

Section Two

Index Number 4

Point 4.5

Issues

Resource Consents

Process

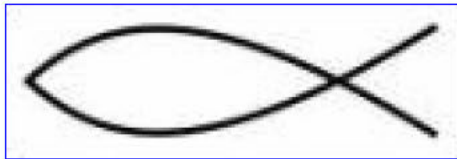
MY ISSUE IS.....

Thank you. Please submit your thoughts to keep our Plan alive. Your changes make the difference.

Te Mana Kupenga o Ipipiri

The Moana Management Plan of Ipipiri

Second Edition
2008



Ngati Kuta me Patukeha ki Te Rawhiti

Compiled by Robert Willoughby
from the hui and whakaaro of whanau hapu
mandated by Te Kahui Kuia Kaumatua o Te Rawhiti

Timatanga | Introduction to the Moana Plan

1.0 Whakaaro Whakamua The Vision	4
2.0 Uaratanga Mission Statement	4
3.0 O Matou Matatika Our Guiding Principles	4
4.0 Ngati Kuta me Patukeha hapu.....	5
5.0 Whakapapa.....	5
Te Rohe.....	6
7.0 Te Whare Tupuna	7
8.0 Whakawhanaungatanga Building Relationships	7
9.0 The declaration of Independence and Te Tiriti o Waitangi.....	8
10.0 Nga Kereema mo te whenua mo te moana Land, Seabed and Foreshore Claims.....	9
11.0 Kaitiakitanga Guardianship	9
12.0 Taake mo te Taiao Environmental Levy Fund	9
13.0 Tirohanga Whaanui Overall Strategic Direction.....	10
14.0 Te Kupenga o Te Moana Ipipiri Mana Moana Fisheries Management.....	10
15.0 APPENDIX I Kupu Maori Glossary.....	37

Acknowledgements

Thanks to the following:

Translator Te Reo: Marara Te Tai Hook
 Compiler: Robert Willoughby
 Editor: Helen Mountain Harte

Thanks and acknowledgement to the whanau / hapu who have had concerns about the fishery and its health for decades and to those who have made these views known and have given their knowledge to help form this Plan.

Kupu Maramatanga o te Taumata

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha share kaitiakitanga of Te Rawhiti. We are the kaitiaki of Rakaumangamanga. We are the ahi kaa roa of Ngapuhi. We hold mana whenua and mana moana for this district of Ipipiri (Bay of Islands). This is what underpins our actions in developing this plan, and of placing our claim with the Waitangi Tribunal to redress the past.

This Plan identifies the vision of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha today.

While Ngati Kuta and Patukeha propose this plan, the benefits are not exclusive to them.

We acknowledge that Te Rawhiti has great significance to iwi, to the community, to the nation and to government agencies. Our goal is to develop beneficial relationships with all stakeholders so that we participate in the management of our rohe. In this way we honour our bond with the past and the future, to care for the mauri, the life force, of 'nga taonga tuku iho', the treasures handed down. These treasures are the people, all people, and the environment.

Developing ways to keep this mauri of people and the moana healthy is the main purpose of Te Kupenga o Ngati Kuta and Patukeha Moana Management Plan. If this mauri is alive with health, then so is everything, everywhere.

There will be hapu collaboration with all stakeholders in the Bay of Islands. We all need this co-operation at managerial, decision-making levels to ensure the best care for the most precious Mauri. We welcome this. This plan is based on the foundation that hau kainga have primary ahi kaa status in each hapu rohe and therefore are mana whenua and mana moana.

This Plan is a living document, always changing.

No reira,
Tena koutou katoa.

Robert Willoughby for



TE KAHUI KUIA/KAUMATUA O TE RAWHITI

Matutaera Clendon, Moka Puru, Marara Te Tai Hook, Te Aroha Rewha, Naini Rewha Hepi, Te Karaka Ahitapu, Peti Ahitapu, Della Margaret Hartwell, Te Ringa Witehira, Richard Witehira, Joe Bristowe, Henare Titore

1.0 Whakaaro Whakamua | The Vision

Ki te tiaki, ki te awhi, ki te whakapuumaui i te mauri o Ipipiri me ona taonga.
To protect, sustain and enhance the mauri of Ipipiri and its treasures.

2.0 Uaratanga | Mission Statement

To develop and maintain appropriate systems for our hapu to care for and manage our environmental and human resources

- a) To ensure we have the best people for the job to achieve this vision
- b) To ensure that we have the best coastal and moana conservation practices in this vision
- c) To ensure that we have the most beneficial relationships established with whanau, hapu, iwi local and national government agencies, local stakeholders and community
- d) To ensure that we are able to establish commercially successful enterprises from our hapu managed resources for the benefit of our people, and therefore the wider community.

3.0 O Matou Matatika | Our Guiding Principles

In our communication with people, internally and externally, we will incorporate these fundamental values into our lives and our management ethic:

- | | |
|---|--|
| ➤ Aroha-The encompassing love of the One who has many names; the wairua of the tupuna; the love of non-violence | ➤ Tika me te Pono-openness, honesty, directness; crime free whanau, hapu |
| ➤ Nga Taonga Tuku Iho-Guard the things of the mind, body, soul, environment and objects inherited from the past | ➤ Kaitiakitanga-care and protection of everyone and everything |
| ➤ Whanaungatanga-the relationships to the past; the whanau, hapu and iwi connections | ➤ Rangatiratanga-ownership; self determination; to work together in unity with all |

4.0 Ngati Kuta and Patukeha Hapu

We believe in hapu autonomy. The internal processes of the Hapu are for the Hapu to determine, and ultimately will be established according to tikanga.

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha recounts its identity through pepeha and whakapapa. The mana of its tuupuna extends geographically and genealogically. These tuupuna marked their rohe in pepeha and their people in whakapapa. It is through these techniques that

we identify ourselves as tangata whenua, people of the land, and as Ngati Kuta and Patukeha, people with mana whenua over Te Rawhiti and Ipipiri.

4.1 Pepeha

Ko Rakaumangamanga te maunga

Ko Ipipiri te moana

Ko Ngatokimatawhaorua ko Maataatua te waka

Ko Ngapuhi te iwi

Ko Ngati Kuta me Patukeha nga hapu

Ko Te Rawhiti te marae

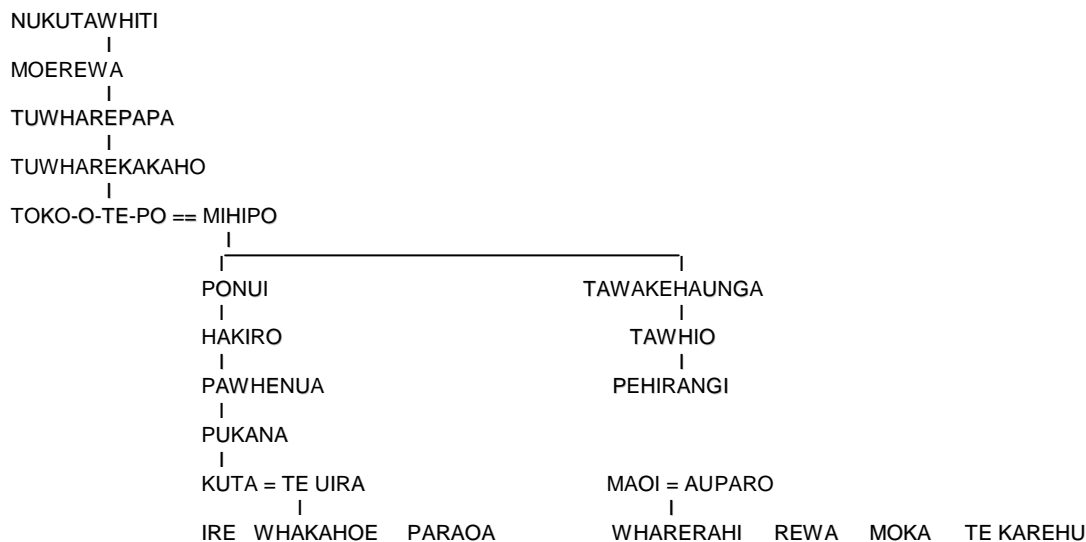
Ko Te Pere, Te Mauri o Patukeha me Ngati Kuta ki Te Rawhiti te Wharehui

Ko Te Rawhiti War Memorial Dining Hall te Wharekai

Ko Tangaroa to Tekoteko

Mauri Ora.

4.2 Whakapapa



5.0 The Gazetted Rohe Application



6 Te Rohe

First verse from a waiata composed by Henare Clendon to confirm our origins and direct link to the whenua.

The first verse is reproduced as follows:

*Ko Rakaumangamanga, ko te maunga rongo nui,
E tu mai nei, kei te marangai
Ko te herenga kupu o nga tuupuna
Ko Rakaumangamanga, no Hawaiki e.
Rakaumangamanga is the well-known mountain
Standing to the east
The binding word of the ancestors
Rakaumangamanga is from Hawaiki.*

6.1 Rakaumangamanga | the gathering of the canoes

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha take their inherited responsibility of kaitiakitanga of Rakaumangamanga seriously. It has an ancient history with a direct link to Hawaii. Our ancestor, Kupe, the greatest navigator we know, charted a vast navigational triangle covering the entire Pacific ocean. Rakaumangamanga, Hawaii and Rapanui were the markers. It was to Rakaumangamanga that our ancestors were directed. This is where the huge ocean waka gathered. This was the place where we stepped ashore. As the seventh pillar of the Whare Tapu o Ngapuhi, we guard and care for it as ahi kaa roa

6.2 Te Wahanga ki nga Rohe | Areas of Shared Interest

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha do not propose to draw any "hard" lines on maps at this stage. We recognise the overlap between our rohe and that of other hapu and iwi to our south, north and west. These overlaps result from our shared whakapapa, histories, intermarriages, alliances and conquests. We prefer to think of these as areas of shared or common interest rather than as areas of conflict. We reaffirm our relationships each time these matters are debated.

7.0 Te Whare Tupuna – Te Pere, Te Mauri o Patukeha me Ngati Kuta-Te Rawhiti

Te Rawhiti Marae is the centre, the heart of the community for all traditional cultural knowledge and modern community affairs. It is the home that we as whanau share collectively. Our marae keeps us together, physically, spiritually and mentally. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha endeavour to nurture its people and raise its mokopuna from this home.

7.1 Historical Background

Our wharehui was built and opened in 1910. The building stood alone until whanau members built the wharekai (kitchen/dining room) in 1947. The wharekai was condemned 20 years later in 1967, and was demolished in 1970. After much effort and commitment from our people to raise money, our new wharekai was built and opened in 1977 and re-named 'Te Rawhiti War Memorial Hall' in remembrance of our many men who left Te Rawhiti to serve in both World Wars I and II and for those who did not return.

7.2 Governance and Management

Today our marae and the land upon which it sits are registered as a 439 Maori Reservation under Te Ture Whenua Maori Land Act 1993 and the Maori Reservations Regulations, 1994. It is legally constituted and is for the common use and benefit of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha.

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha appoint responsible kaitiaki to manage and administer the affairs of the marae. Each hapu elects four trustees to make up a unit of eight.

Ngati Kuta kaitiaki are:	Patukeha kaitiaki are:
Helen Mountain Harte	Te Ringa Witehira

Rahema Hook	Joe Bristowe
Wayne Erceg	Richard Witehira
Alfred Kareko	Hohepa Hemara

7.3 Te Rawhiti Marae Development Committee

We are in the process of planning and developing improvements to our marae. A development group, a sub-committee of the Marae Trust, of some 10 members with a 3-person working party. It is applying to become a Charitable Trust.

The Marae Development Committee works closely with the Marae Trustees and the hapu to see this project through to completion. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha will support both the Development Committee and the Marae Trustees to achieve the Marae upgrade.

6.0 Whakawhanaungatanga | Building Relationships

Implementing this Plan requires strong and enduring relationships based on a sound understanding of each other, within and without the hapu.

8.1 Declaration of Whakawhanaungatanga

8.1.1 Patukeha and Ngati Kuta Hapu

The Hapu share mana whenua, mana moana and ahi kaa roa. We will work co-operatively and collaboratively on issues which concern our area.

8.1.2 Nga Hapu ki Taumarere

We further recognise the whakapapa, mana and interests of Nga Hapu ki Taumarere. We acknowledge our relationship, and recognise our need to collaborate. Nga hapu are:

- Ngati Manu
- Te Uri Karaka
- Te Kapotai
- Kororareka Marae Society
- Patukeha
- Ngati Kuta

Our management plan encourages a close working relationship with Nga Hapu ki Taumarere. We shall maintain an open door policy with these hapu. When there is an issue concerning them, we will confer. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha will consult only on its own behalf when it is not working collaboratively with these groups on a common issue.

8.1.3 Iwi Authorities

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha are hapu of Ngapuhi-nui-tonu. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha are the kaitiaki of the area, which borders the iwi of Ngapuhi, Ngatiwai and Ngati Hine, Whaingaroa. We will consult with their respective iwi authorities to seek solutions for shared management.

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha shall foster closer working relationships with other Moana Roopu throughout Taitokerau. We see benefit in establishing generic environmental and

human policy to coordinate our responses to the development of environmental and human decision-making.

We recognise that the role of Te Runanga a Iwi o Ngapuhi and the Ngatiwai Trust Board, in receiving, managing and allocating the assets of the Treaty Fisheries Settlement, needs to be clarified. We acknowledge that the Crown prefers to deal with Iwi Runanga authorities over individual hapu, and affirm that we will work to achieve mutually beneficial outcomes. These issues will be negotiated with the iwi authorities.

8.1.4 Government Authorities

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha will continue developing positive working relationships through mutual respect and communication with:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ➤ Far North District Council | ➤ Ministry of Social Development |
| ➤ Northland Regional Council | ➤ Ministry of Health |
| ➤ Department of Conservation | ➤ Ministry of Education |
| ➤ Te Puni Kokiri | ➤ Ministry of Justice |
| ➤ New Zealand Historical Places Trust | ➤ Department of Internal Affairs |
| ➤ Ministry of Fisheries | ➤ Other Government Departments. |

We intend to be active in central and local government issues, to be proactively involved in collective management planning, administration and in the decision-making of all issues that affect Ngati Kuta and Patukeha.

9.0 The Declaration of Independence and Te Tiriti o Waitangi

Tenana, Te Kemara, Wharerahi, Rewa, Moka, Titore signed The Declaration of Independence and Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Irikohe and Te Tai signed only the Tiriti. These are the founding documents of Aotearoa New Zealand. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha adhere to the intent of our tuupuna in their desired partnership with the Crown.

Today, 170 years later we are still aggrieved at the failure of the Crown to honour the Declaration of Independence and Te Tiriti O Waitangi.

This Te Kupenga Moana Management Plan is a proactive approach by Ngati Kuta and Patukeha to honour the intent of these founding documents by asserting rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga in our Moana area. This is a driving belief underpinning this Plan.

10.0 Nga Kereme mo nga whenua me te moana | Land, Seabed and Foreshore Claims

The coastline of Ipipiri is precious to Ngati Kuta and Patukeha. Our livelihood is bound to this coast. Our tuupuna did not cede mana moana to the Crown. We regard the foreshore and seabed legislation as legalised theft of our taonga by the Labour government. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha actively opposed the proposed legislation in its submissions to the Parliamentary Select Committee. Our right of redress in the Māori Land Court was removed with the passing of this legislation. Claims were lodged with the Waitangi Tribunal to seek redress, and to place on record our continued opposition to the alienation of our taonga.

11.0 Kaitiakitanga | Guardianship

The developing of kaitiakitanga and other traditional resource management methods with modern techniques, practices and processes is a key aim of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha. Kaitiakitanga is a vital factor for sustaining well-being. In 1840 our status as kaitiaki and

our responsibility to practise kaitiakitanga was acknowledged in Article II of Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

Kaitiaki care for our taonga, according to our tikanga. They are empowered through whakapapa and ahi kaa roa. Our kaupapa for the practice of kaitiakitanga has been built up over many generations. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha regard these credentials as equivalent to academic qualifications.

We acknowledge that the inland and coastal hapu had seasonal fishing rights in our rohe kaitiaki and that these were agreed to by the hau kainga and the intended fishers.

We acknowledge that the RMA, Section 7a, specifically recognises kaitiakitanga. The Environment Court does now listen to the value of expert experience and traditional knowledge in evidence. The Ministry of Fisheries Act 1996 is an Act which we acknowledge.

There is an increasing demand for our people and kaitiaki to become skilled in modern technologies, which will further enhance traditional kaitiakitanga. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha are currently looking for opportunities for kaitiaki to enter into new fields. There are courses available for training kaitiaki.

12.0 Take mo te Taiao | Environmental Levy Fund

In order to achieve our objectives to protect, enhance and maintain the benchmarks of this plan, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha propose to discuss the viability of establishing and implementing an Environment Levy

13.0 Tirohanga Whaanui | Overall Strategic Direction

Strategic direction for Ngati Kuta and Patukeha is as follows:

- 1.0 Plan Overview
- 1.1 To develop an effective structure with systems and planning processes to manage our affairs
- 1.2 To ensure that we have the most suitable people to achieve our vision

MANA MOANA Fisheries Management

Executive Summary

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha acknowledge the potential of customary management tools to enhance sedentary species such as mussel, pipi, scallops, kina, paua, etc, and the limitations of these tools in effectively managing mobile finfish stocks.

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha also acknowledge that large-scale fisheries management decisions and objectives have a major impact on our ability to harvest mobile finfish stocks for customary use and fish gathering for our whanau.

For our kaimoana we consider that large-scale fisheries management decisions in Quota Management Area (QMA area number one) where our rohe area is included should be focused on maintaining robust fish stocks for all species in which we have an interest.

Because our plan is evolving we have not identified all issues of concern to us, nor to have developed policies on all issues. Therefore, we have developed a set of “baselines” or minimum standards to be set at the level of stopping the destructive reduction of our fish stocks and our marine and coastal environment.

1.0 THE BENCHMARKS OF THE PLAN

These Principles are the base, the benchmark, below which we regard as unsatisfactory. Our Plan is to raise the standard of the Moana to these levels.

1.1 Baseline 1 Maintaining the Kaimoana Maximum Sustainable Yield:

Our objective is that fish stocks that provide our kaimoana are to be managed so the fishery is **always above** the biomass required to produce maximum sustainable yield (Bmsy).

1.2 Baseline 2 Maintaining the Taonga Species Maximum sustainable Yield:

For species that are particularly treasured, our objective is ensuring the stock is managed **significantly above** the biomass required to produce maximum sustainable yield (Bmsy).

1.2.1 Species in which we have an interest

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| ○ Ururoa | hammerhead shark |
| ○ Mango | shark |
| ○ Albacore | Tuna |
| ○ Swordfish | |
| ○ Marlin | |
| ○ Matata | red snapper |
| ○ Parrot fish | |
| ○ Cod | |
| ○ Moke | |
| ○ Parore | |
| ○ Pakarua/whi | stingray |
| ○ Koheru | mackerel |
| ○ Kokiri | leatherjacket |
| ○ Ika paihau | red mullet |
| ○ Pakirikiri | spotty |
| ○ Wheke | octopus |
| ○ Yabby | prawns |
| ○ Barracuda | |
| ○ Kotore | sea anemone |
| ○ Limpets | |

Species that are particularly treasured

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| ○ Papahu | dolphin |
| ○ Tohora | whales/orca |
| ○ Tamure | snapper |
| ○ Ara ara | trevally |
| ○ Tarakihi | |
| ○ Gurnard | |
| ○ Porae | |
| ○ Maomao | |
| ○ Takeke | piper |
| ○ Warehunga kingfish | |
| ○ Kanae | mullet |

- Kahawai
- Patiki flounder
- Hapuka
- Uai herring
- Koura crayfish
- Kina
- Kutai mussels
- Paua
- Tio oysters
- Tipa scallops
- Pipi
- Tuatua
- Pupu periwinkle
- Kawiriwiri large periwinkle
- Karengo seaweed
- Papaka crab
- Tuna eel
- Ngaroa eel
- Oi mutton bird

1.3 Baseline 3 Marine Protection and Marine Reserves

1.3.1 The Reserve or Customary Area

As a Treaty partner, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha reserve the right to have first option at implementing a customary management tool that allows for the gathering of kaimoana for customary and food gathering purposes in their rohe moana.

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha view marine reserves as a confiscation of possible sites for the implementation of customary Maori management tools such as mataitai, taiapure and rahui. As tangata whenua we believe we should not have our choices limited by the Department of Conservation locking up prime fishing areas within our rohe as no-take marine reserves forever

Until all of our customary areas have been identified and suitable tools applied to achieve our objectives we do not accept the Crown imposing area controls within our rohe which could prevent or limit customary take, or our choice of areas for this take.

If, after a reasonable amount of time, a marine reserve fails to achieve its stated objectives, it should then revert back to normal status to provide for the needs of Ngati Kuta, Patukeha and other hapu. The markers for this baseline must be developed and we welcome any feedback and input they may have.

Every marine reserve or customary fishing area which is implemented must undergo a test to determine whether it might have an "undue" impact on commercial fishers' ability to catch their quota within the Quota Management Area. This test implies there is a limit on the total amount of area that can be given marine reserve or customary management status. Eventually, it will not be possible to have a marine reserve or customary area implemented without exceeding the SAE (Significant Adverse Effects) test threshold. This is where a reserve is imposed with some exemptions such customary fishing. commercial fishing is excluded but public may boat and swim there, but not fish.

This is defined in the NZ Coastal Policy Statement Sections 33 & 34.

1.3.2 Issues

- This has effectively created a race for space between Maori customary management areas and the Department of Conservation. It also has the potential to create a race for space between hapu in the same Quota Management Area.

- This race is unfair because the Ministry of Fisheries have failed to give management effect to customary tools since the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992. Had the Government fulfilled its obligations the customary aspect of the settlement would be far more progressed.
- The Government's failure to implement the customary regulations in a timely fashion have unfairly handicapped Ngati Kuta and Patukeha, while the well resourced Department of Conservation has had no such constraint.
- Ngati Kuta and Patukeha view Marine Reserves as a confiscation of possible sites for the implementation of customary Maori management tools such as Mataitai, Taiapure and Rahui. As tangata whenua we believe we should not have our choices limited by the Department of Conservation locking up prime fishing areas within our rohe as no-take Marine Reserves.

1.3.3 The Implementation Path

- As a Treaty partner Ngati Kuta and Patukeha reserve the right to have first option at implementing a customary management tool which allows for the gathering of kaimoana for customary and food gathering purposes.
- Until all of our customary areas have been identified and suitable tools applied to achieve our objectives we do not accept the Crown imposing area controls within our rohe which could prevent or limit customary take, or our choice of areas.
- For other hapu claiming customary usage in our rohe moana, these inland and adjacent coastal hapu must identify and support their areas according to our customary controls
- A more transparent and inclusive process is required for marine reserves. There needs to be a full analysis of the objectives, costs and benefits of a marine reserve. As tangata whenua Ngati Kuta should be given an opportunity to apply customary management tools to achieve the same objectives without losing the area to a no-take marine reserve.
- If, after a reasonable amount of time, a marine reserve fails to achieve its stated objectives it should then revert back to normal status to provide for the needs of Ngati Kuta, Patukeha and other Hapu.

2.0 FISHERIES ACT 1996

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha acknowledge their roles and responsibilities as Kaitiaki within the Act. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha also acknowledge the role of Min Fish to work with Ngati Kuta and Patukeha to enable input and participation of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha on all fisheries matters affecting the rohe with particular regard to Kaitiakitanga.

References

- a) Part 3 Fisheries Act 1996, Clause 11 Sustainability Measures
- b) Clause 11A Fisheries Plans
- c) Clause 12 Consultation
- d) Kiamona Customary Regulations 1988

3.0 CAPACITY BUILDING

Our Te Kupenga Moana Roopu, consists of equal numbers of members from both Hapu, and will be responsible for the management and administration of our Te Kupenga Moana Plan and Policies. The foundations are currently developing. Te Kupenga Moana Roopu is made up of two

teams, Commercial and Customary. Each team manages and administers different portfolios, but operate together in developing and administering the plan.

This plan will be refined over time as progress is made against tasks we have set ourselves. It is also our commitment to the principles enshrined in the Te Tiriti O Waitangi. It is an inclusive plan where responsibility is shared between ourselves, other Hapu and all other users of this rohe and the resources within it. Hau kainga hold Mana Moana Mana whenua in each rohe.

4.0 The Management Structure of the rohe moana ki Raukaumangamaunga

Issue: the question of customary fishery use

- 4.1** The rohe is determined as areas where Ngati Kuta traditionally fished. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha wish to continue customarily fish in these areas. In doing so, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha realises that this management plan has to be inclusive of all hapu.
- 4.2** Coastal hapu lived from the sea. It was their food cupboard. Their role was to manage the fishery on behalf of others. Each hapu would open and close seasons in their area, determine access of their own and other hapu, and the species and quantities to be taken. Hapu who wished to fish would seek permission from the hau kainga before fishing commenced with the formal opening of the season based on the tohu to signal this and often the hau kainga would accompany the fishing expeditions as they had the intimate knowledge of the fishery. This was the way the fishery was managed, an organised process of sustainable harvesting.
- 4.3** Despite changes in the way the fishery is harvested now, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha will continue to use the same guiding principles it traditionally used to protect the fishery in its rohe. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha will support all hau kainga in their rohe where they live.
- 4.4.1** Ngati Kuta and Patukeha wish to continue its customary fishing rights in two areas, other than its own rohe, as its gazettment clearly shows. It will continue to discuss its wishes in the same way that it will discuss the seasonal fishing rights of other hapu in the Ngati Kuta/ Patukeha Ipipiri rohe.

The Implementation Path

4.5 The Principles of customary exchange

Such interchange of customary rights are carried out according to principles:

- a) Respect hapu authority and lore for each rohe
- b) Seek permission to access the rohe to customarily harvest
- c) Access shall follow the process of lore/law to customarily harvest
- d) Apply conservation methods to manage the fishery sustainably
- e) Access to the fishery does not carry access to the land
- f) The user rights are readdressed annually

4.6 The Method

- Work to enhance the mauri of the fishery by working collaboratively with other hapu
- Understand that kaitiakitanga is an inclusive process and coastal hapu share close relationships to each other and the fishery
- Promote the formation of a kahui made up of a Kaumatua/kuia appointed from each coastal hapu
- Ensure the kahui represents hapu who hold ahi kaa within the management area
- Support hapu to appoint its own permit issuers for their rohe ahi kaa
- Shall include permit issuers including kahui members to be registered as kaitiaki for their rohe ahi kaa as part of the management area

- Encourage permits to be issued by the hau kainga for their rohe and not for other hapu rohe
- Assist the kahui to play a guiding role in bringing issues affecting their rohe to the table and that these issues are worked up into projects
- Work with hapu, agencies and other interest groups to provide support and assistance for projects

4.7 The rohe is determined as areas where Ngati Kuta traditionally fish. Ngati Kuta also wishes to continue customarily fishing in these areas. In doing so Ngati Kuta recognizes the rohe moana of other hapu and their hau kainga status. It is because of these dynamics this management plan has to be inclusive of these hapu.

Coastal hapu lived from the sea. It was their food cupboard. Their role was to manage the fishery on behalf of others. They would open and close seasons, determine access, species and quantities to be taken. Hapu who wished to fish would seek permission from the hau kainga before fishing commenced and often the hau kainga would accompany the fishing expedition. This was the way the fishery was managed, an organised process of sustainable harvesting.

Despite changes in the way the fishery is harvested now, Ngati Kuta will continue to use the same guiding principles traditionally used to protect their customary fishery. Ngati Kuta will support all ahi kaa and rohe in which they live.



The map of the gazetted area of customary use submitted by Ngati Kuta me Patukeha which extends beyond its rohe moana and shared boundaries. We also had seasonal access to Wiwiki and Helena Bay.

5.0 The Moana Roopu

5.1 Currently, our **Customary Fisheries team** is operating and has developed policies and processes by which Ngati Kuta and Patukeha intend to manage our customary take of fish and shellfish stock. These policies and processes have been presented to officers of Min Fish Whangarei. Further discussions are to be held with them to build our relationship and develop our customary kaitiakitanga and sustainable management of fish stocks. Our customary kaitiaki are all registered with Min Fish and are actively managing the customary portfolio.

5.2 The **Commercial Fisheries team** is being developed. This portfolio has significant economic issues to be considered including tourism, recreational fishing and the commercial fishing industry. Much of the work that has to be done requires a wider input from commercial and recreational stakeholders. All of these interests significantly impact on the sustainability of our fish resources.

5.3 Also consideration has to be given to land-based developments that may impact on the waterways and coastal marine environment. For example the impact of housing, substandard roading and pine forests all have adverse effects on the coastal environment and wildlife food chain.

5.4 The political issues surrounding fisheries assets are complicated however our teams will continue to pursue appropriate policies and processes which will satisfy the objectives of this plan and those of other interested groups.

6.0 Nga Kaitiaki

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha have formalised a collective of kaitiaki who are responsible for the administration of the Mana Moana plan. All kaitiaki have been appointed by Ngati Kuta and Patukeha Hapu and are under the general direction and control of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha.

6.1 The collective is identified as Te Kupenga Moana Roopu and is the point of contact for all matters pertaining to Mana Moana.

6.2 The Fisheries Management Unit is a “hands on” working group and is responsible for the everyday administration of Mana Moana. Their primary role is to:

- administer the plan
- facilitate the daily affairs
- manage customary fisheries
- gather information
- consult all approvals with the Hapu
- issue customary fisheries permits
- initiate legislation

6.1 Nga Kaitiaki

	NGA KAITIAKI O TE KUPENGA O	TE MOANA ROOPU
	Ngati Kuta	Patukeha
	Russell Hook	
	Della Margaret Snowden Hartwell	
	Matutaera Clendon	
	Robert Willoughby	
	Francis Hepi	
	George Riley	

7.0 Tauranga Ika me Tikanga Tuku Iho/Customary Fisheries and Traditional Techniques

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha traditions and lifestyle are primarily based around the sea and its resources. The fish and shellfish stock are extremely precious therefore preventative measures will be taken to ensure the absolute well being of the moana.

With the introduction of European fishing legislative methods, we have seen fish stocks deplete significantly. This is evident by government intervention to correct over-fishing particularly by commercial trawlers inshore fishing methods.

7.1 Traditional Techniques

Traditional fishing techniques have been forced to stop due to legislation. Daily fishing was never a method practiced by our whanau mai rano as it is seen as a method of depleting fish stocks. Instead, seasonal fishing was practiced and once the season closed, seasonal hunting of birds and wild pigs would begin. Preserving or smoking seasonal catch would keep the hapu in food stores until the next fishing season. Certain fish species were hunted at different times depending on plentiful supply and when spawning began and ended.

7.2 The recreational daily fishing system is one that allows set amounts of fish species to be taken. We would like to see stricter management of the daily take.

7.3 Other protection methods have been recommended such as Marine Taiapure and Mataitai Reserves however seeking an agreement on the different options remains unresolved for now.

7.4 The huge no-take Marine Reserves being proposed highlights the need to accelerate the implementation of this plan

7.5 Rahui are effective methods of protecting all aspects of marine life. For example, a Rahui can be short, medium or long term depending upon the desired objectives. A Rahui provides flexibility and is an ideal tool especially within the Bay of Islands as we have so many different interest groups. For example, areas can be shut down to fishing but can still allow the daily take of shellfish or the take of a certain species can be restricted or seasonal or quota limits imposed, etc.

7.6 Catching small and medium fish rather than the large breeding stock is conservation from our past

7.7 Leaving spawning fish and shellfish is another conservation method.

7.8 The Implementation Path

Aims: To discuss and negotiate the reintroduction of our traditional style of fishing with specific traditions such as Rahui methods to ensure maximum sustainable stock levels are maintained, by:

- 1) incorporating them within new modern legislation
- 2) creating new legislative processes
- 3) education programmes from Min Fish

Method:

- reviewing and reducing the current recreational daily take permitted within the rohe
- customising legislation specifically pertaining to recreational fisheries within Ipipiri (BOI)
- reviewing the current seasonal dates for scallops and initiating new seasons on other delicacy species
- raising awareness and promoting the benefits of Rahui
- seeking the overall protection objectives of the wider community
- assessing and developing Rahui proposals for:
 - no fishing areas
 - no shellfish taking areas
 - protected species areas
 - dolphin safe havens
 - full (no take) closures
 - seasonal closures (breeding times, etc.)
 - species quota (limit on species)

8.0 Te Atawhai I Te Moana I Water Management

The culture of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha is based largely on the sea. Its resources for survival have come from the sea. For many generations we have fished the waters as part of our staple diet. This tikanga continues today and we hold much useful and workable knowledge of the rohe, water conditions and marine wild life.

With a growing commercial interest in the sea resources, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha insist that better methods of sustaining, in particular, the fish and shellfish stocks, is required. Growing water tourism activities and increased recreational interaction also requires assessment and stricter methods of management to protect and enhance our conservational inheritance and clean water quality.

Our management objectives are based on the benchmarks of this plan.

8.1 The Implementation Path

Aim

To provide for developments which allow public and recreational users to interact with the resources and fisheries in our rohe, including commercial users, providing the activities are environmentally sustainable for all users.

Methods

To promote strict management practices regarding treated sewage discharge, over fishing, stress to wild fish species and the other adverse impacts that commercial and recreational activities create

Issues

- coastal land based development is impacting and changing the seabed and foreshore
- growing recreational use of the waters
- increase in water based tourism activities
- commercial fishing and aqua marine farming activities
- sewerage & refuse disposal
- management of moorings, marinas and wharves
- recreational water safety and compliance
- overall environmental and fisheries compliance
- lack of a cohesive foreshore management plan
- adverse impact of pine pollen on shellfish beds

The issues are complex and they impact negatively on our coastal environment.

8.0 Rangahau Moana I Marine Research

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha are very excited about the future possible research developments which have been and could be established within the rohe. Our unique water resources offer unlimited opportunities to learn more about the underwater world. At present two baseline studies are being completed showing past and present stocks in Ipipiri. Stock counts of shellfish and fish will be undertaken to create a database for Ngati Kuta and Patukeha to work with in the next projects.

8.1 The Implementation Path

Issues: Changes in the water environment are significant.

- fish and shellfish numbers is unknown. Current practices assume fish stocks will always be plentiful
- overall fishing use is unknown and its impacts
- sea grass areas where small fish breed is declining
- invasion of star fish and their impact
- mud fish migration to deeper waters
- decline in seaweed
- impacts on wild fish species through tourism
- impact of silt on the seabed and sea life
- water quality unknown

- commercial aqua marine farming
- impact of pine pollen on shellfish

Aims

- 1) To establish a database to quantify fish stocks, flora and fauna, shellfish
- 2) To compare these results against what is currently known.

Objectives:

- initiate a stock count of shellfish, flora and fauna and fish species
- work with Min Fish and NRC to develop the methodology and implement the survey
- correlate information and trends for invasive species and their impact
- identify good practices for tourism interaction to protect the well being of the wild fish species for all to enjoy
- gather information about aqua marine farming and its suitability and identify potential areas (if any)
- initiate a silt build up assessment of the sea bed and pin point the source
- find out the impact of pine pollen and pine forest run off has on shellfish and the foreshore
- train Ngati Kuta and Patukeha together with professionals to carry out the survey
- establish a Ngati Kuta and Patukeha database from the survey findings
- establish regular Ngati Kuta and Patukeha operated water quality testing

9.0 He Ika Aru Moni I Commercial Fishing

9.1 Aapure Moana I Aquaculture Marine Areas

The issues surrounding Marine Farming are significant. Contamination, visual and other environment effects associated with aquamarine farming activities are often a debatable topic.

1 Oyster farming is a popular commercial activity within the Waikare Inlet and provides local employment however serious contamination factors have seen many of these farms close. Nevertheless Marine Farming has economic potential and benefits for the area.

2 Seabed and Foreshore issues are being debated and are yet to be resolved. We anticipate such resolve could be some way off. Very little is known about the impact of farming and the causes and effects it has on our environment. This needs to be determined by area and species. Until this information has been gathered and assessed, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha does not support the establishment of any new farms until proper planning can be initiated and quantified.

3 Furthermore, Ngati Kuta and Patukeha does not support inshore marine farming on the basis that there are too many competing groups who use the Bay of Islands and because of its natural heritage and conservation values and the commercial importance to the tourist industry

9.2 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- visual impacts and contamination factors
- impacts to tourism
- impacts to recreational and customary use
- environmental and lifestyle impacts
- lack of infrastructure and planning for marine farming

Alternatively, our preferred choice is offshore deep sea submerged ranching. This is a method that requires further investigation. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha would like to see

sound business and environmental models created to ensure farming activities are carefully managed.

Aims:

To ensure environmental protection, heritage, conservation and the well being of wildlife and to balance these values with commercial interests, local and recreational users.

Methods:

- assessing and identifying the full adverse impacts that farming has on the environment and native wildlife
- determine the capacity of sustainable farming that the rohe can manage
- identify the types of farming suitable for development within the rohe
- identify areas suitable for development
- determine a set number (maximum) of areas for farming
- identify a maximum area size limit
- negotiate an allocation of the set number of areas for use and economic development by Ngati Kuta and Patukeha
- initiate an Environment Levy payable by the farms to be held in a local fund for re-distribution on research and environment maintenance

9.3 Hii Ika Aru Moni | Commercial Fishing

Continuous commercial fishing in the Bay of Islands has impacted on fish stocks. Areas where schools of Trevally and Tarakihi were plentiful are now emptied. Nevertheless commercial fishing is part of our community and plays an economic role.

It should also be noted that Maori hold a large interest in the commercial quota

Charter fishermen have undertaken their own daily take standards which is lower than the allowable recreational take. Whilst we applaud the initiative it does highlight the need for alignment across all user groups.

9.3.1 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- Stock depletion is our primary concern. Practices using purse seining, pair trawling, drag net fishing, long lining and some set netting have taken out large quantities of fish particularly inshore where these methods were used.
- from Ngati Kuta and Patukeha perspective many of our inshore fisheries is in a depleted state therefore the QMS system is not providing the sustainability for our social, cultural and economic means
- Some commercial practices do irreparable damage to the seabed and breeding stocks.
- The reality is, that while fishing is an industry from which people earn their living, the industry also has a responsibility toward other interests who share the rohe

Aim: Our (Ngati Kuta and Patukeha) objective is to achieve our benchmark: that fish stocks which provide our kaimoana are managed so that the fishery is always above the biomass required to produce the maximum sustainable yield always.

Methods:

- commercial fishing operates 5 km off shore from Cape Brett. Some commercial quota is allocated for the inner BOI. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha would like this limited to quota allocation of crayfish, bait fish and long lining limited to 100 hooks.
- commercial fishing methods be modified to minimise collateral damage on bi-catch and seabed

- work with Min Fish and NIWA to monitor the commercial take so that the MSY levels are carefully managed.
- get a better understanding of the commercial fishing industry to see if some cross over opportunities with aqua farming are possible.
- work with local fishing groups on conservation methods and sustainable practices
- work with recreational users, charter fishing groups and Min Fish on bag & size limits
- ban dredging for scallops but not free diving
- provide training to customary permit issuers on how to manage permit quantities and public relations

10.0 Hapu Roopu Arataki I Hapu Economic Opportunities

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha by tradition are fishing people. We have lived off the sea for many generations. Many of our whanau have been involved in commercial fishing and tourism from time to time. Our goal is to create wealth through employment for our community, however with low fish stocks and significant changes in the water environment, commercial fishing is becoming a marginal business.

Our approach to economic opportunities has to change. Before we decide to enter into economic enterprises, we must understand more about our environment and fish species in order for us to create profitable commercial activities that are sustainable into long term employment opportunities. Effective management and planning can only come after proper research has been completed. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha aim to work closely with Min Fish, DOC, NIWA and other parties to identify the issues and structure a cohesive plan for this.

10.1 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- no income from water based activities and lack of capital to interact commercially
- lack of capacity to investigate commercial potential
- lack of commercial interaction and knowledge of commercial industry
- no research of impacts from current commercial activities and measures of sustainability
- no commercial database

Aim:

- Determine the potential of commercial fishing and tourism whilst sustaining the environment, as a sound economic base for job creation

Methods:

Step One:

- Research effects from existing commercial activities
- Cross examine research information against stock count results
- Identify strengths and weaknesses from results
- Identify best approach to future planning of recreational and commercial fisheries management

Step Two

- Develop a plan for recreational fishing, commercial fishing and aqua marine farming that ensures a sustainable environment and balanced fish stock management
- Build capacity to support the plan

Step Three

- Implement the plan
- Establish the structure to enable the plan
- Ongoing research and monitoring
- Investigate new initiatives i.e.: land based farming or nurseries

11.0 Tuna me nga Kewai I Freshwater Fishing

11.1 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- Little known about our fresh water fish resources
- There is a lack of human resources to fully engage in this role
- The streams at Te Rawhiti-Wairoa, Tangatapu, Te Tawa Iti, Te Tawa, Hauai require research
- The traditional bio-indicators for clean and healthy streams need to be stated e.g. when the eels are fat and plentiful in Wairoa, the stream is healthy

Aims: Build our capacity and knowledge over time related to these issues

Method: Monitor activities as they arise
Source research for Fresh water

12.0 Hii Ika Hakinakina I Recreational Fishing

12.1 Recreational Fishing Regulations

The daily taking of seafood is not a traditional method. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha understand today's methods of harvesting and would like to implement tighter regulations for daily harvesting of seafood within the rohe. Growing recreational activity suggests Ngati Kuta and Patukeha need to review current regulations and the recreational take to ensure fish and shellfish are available for reasonable recreational consumption.

An example of such a review is the Coromandel model. The recreational take and subsequent rules for the Coromandel have been tuned to suit the demands on that environment and fish stocks. The Coromandel model differs significantly from other areas around New Zealand. We would like to establish a similar model customised for the Bay of Islands.

Maori also fall into the category of recreational fishing when they catch kai moana for their household. Some of their customary rights lost as part of the 1992 Sealords settlement. Like other recreational fisherman any adjustment to recreational take affects them as well.

12.1.1 The Implementation Path

Issues

- The Bay of Islands is a popular fishing area attracting high numbers, particularly for recreational fishers
- Sustainability levels have limits, we need to determine what they are for each species
- Reducing recreational limits may have a negative response from the public and other Hapu

Aims:

- Ngati Kuta and Patukeha aim to review the daily seafood take in the "Bay of Islands" and to recommend changes to the Fisheries (Amateur Fishing) regulations 1986.

Methods:

- assess current stock levels
- assess the current permitted daily take
- recommend changes based on our knowledge
- obtain quantified data from Min Fish, DOC, NIWA to support our position
- implement Rahui to conserve or sustain stock areas that are endangered
- attract "buy in" from all user groups using factual data to support our reasoning
- Public education about fish take and size limits

Policy

- 1) That recreational take be customised for the rohe and not be included in a national (one size fits all) take which is based on different factors pertaining to different areas.
- 2) That traditional rahui methods be part of public education.

12.2 Hii Mako, Mango, Taketonga I Game fishing

We acknowledge the historical background and current local involvement and enjoyment that game fishing brings. For some residents this sport has become a recreational and commercial lifestyle. Whilst it is not necessarily an activity that Ngati Kuta and Patukeha support due to its "fishing for sport" nature we do understand the high level of interest in this activity.

12.2.1 The Implementation Path

Issues: Our primary concern is the depletion or extinction of certain species and at times the areas where they are being fished.

Aims: To monitor the fishery to ensure that species do not come under threat of extinction or severe depletion
To protect areas that are significant to their survival

Methods:

- identify methods of assessing the stock number
- identify areas such as breeding grounds and feeding grounds and develop a protection management plan
- promote tag and release as currently practiced
- work with the game fishing community to ensure the fishery is sustainable

Policy:

- Ban trawling/fishing through the 'Hole' at Motukokako (Piercy Island) and within 1km of here and the outer sides of the main islands

13.0 Tauranga Ika I Customary Fisheries

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha already manage their customary fisheries take under Customary Fisheries Regulation 27a

We have established our own rules pertaining to customary take in order to sustain the shellfish stock. Our policies enable Ngati Kuta and Patukeha to monitor customary take practices to sustain the resources.

The issuing of customary permits is an ongoing concern. Communication between permit issuers from each Hapu has not been developed. Customary take is currently managed by the Kaimoana Customary Fishing Regulations 1998. Ngati Kuta and Patukeha have delegated this responsibility to authorised kaitiaki who issue customary permits according to these regulations.

13.1 The Implementation Path

Ngati Kuta and Patukeha are serious about protecting all sea food stocks. We have implemented our tikanga to provide guidelines for our Ngati Kuta and Patukeha kaitiaki to follow. Our rules are currently being implemented by our kaitiaki; however we are unaware of the customary permit issuing practices of other Hapu kaitiaki.

Issues:

- no communication between Ngati Kuta and Patukeha kaitiaki and other kaitiaki in the rohe
- identify who issues permits for customary take in our rohe from outside

- identify the types and amounts of kaimoana being approved
- identify the areas where kaimoana is being taken
- identify where fishermen are landing their catch
- identify how kaitiaki inspect the catch when they land
- identify the inconsistencies in permit issuing

Aims

- to recognise each hapu kaitiaki in their own rohe
- to engage with other kaitiaki to formalise good communication
- to establish consistent practices and identify good working relationships to enable a comprehensive programme for customary take
- identify areas of cultural significance and Wai tapu
- monitor all fisheries activities

Methods

- Gazette the rohe moana
- Establish a specialised advisory group, Te Kahui Kuia/Kaumātua, in which each hapu with a customary interest in the rohe is represented
- formalise a customary Working Group within nga Hapu o Taumarere to ensure consistent practices are implemented
- monitor a bi-monthly review of customary take
- change permitted take when necessary
- implement a sustainable customary fisheries management plan
- make recommendations to the Minister of Fisheries to establish Rahui and other outcomes of our management plan
- together with Min Fish train and equip kaitiaki to carry out their roles and monitor overall fisheries
- develop working relationships with Min Fish/nga hapu and gain formal acknowledgement of Ngati Kuta/Patukeha authority as kaitiaki of their rohe
- recognise the authority of other hapu in their own rohe and their role as kaitiaki hau kainga in those rohe

Policy

Through the kahui and in collaboration with Nga hapu o Taumarere and other coastal hapu review practices and upskill Kaitiaki with the help of Min Fish.

Our current Customary Permitted Take practices are set out below. These rules may be reviewed after gazettment and when input from hapu has been considered

13.2 Kaupapa Tauranga Ika mo Ngati Kuta me Patukeha I Ngati Kuta and Patukeha Customary Fisheries Kaupapa

13.3 Set nets. Long Lines & Crayfish Pots

The following conditions shall apply when proposing to fish with the use of set nets, long lines and crayfish pots:

13.3.1 Set Nets

Set nets must meet the specifications as identified in the Recreational Fisheries Rules. Section of the Recreational Fisheries Rules

13.3.2 Long Lines

Long lines [25 hooks] with ID Tag

13.3.3 Crayfish Pots

Crayfish pots must meet the specifications as identified in the Recreational Fisheries Rules. Section „of the Recreational Fisheries Rules

13.34 Holding Pots

Holding pots may be used to store seafood providing the pot has an ID Tag attached to it identifying the date to which the permit was issued and the expiry date. The Kaitiaki will have a copy of the permit that allows the seafood to be stored in the holding pot.

13.4 ID Tags for set nets, Long Lines & Crayfish Pots

13.4.1 The Implementation Path

Method:

When nets, long lines & crayfish pots are to be set during the day or overnight the Kaitiaki must instigate the following procedure:

Process:

- Issue the applicant a permit
- Record the permit number, expiry date and expiry time on a plastic ID Tag in permanent ink
- Attach the tag to the net, long line or crayfish pot
- Advise what time that the applicant must return to the Kaitiaki the next day with his/her net
- Advise the applicant that the he/she must not remove or alter the ID Tag
- The Kaitiaki shall be responsible for removing the ID Tag once the applicant has returned with the net
- The applicant must return the ID Tag to the Kaitiaki on the day the Tag expires

13.4 Kaimoana Catch Amounts & Size Limits

The following limits are to provide Kaitiaki with a guideline as to amount of each seafood species is authorised. The kaitiaki will use their discretion to decide whether permits will be authorised to collect delicacy seafood for certain Hui and also the catch amounts.

Seafood Description	Catch Limits & Size
MUSSELS	<p><i>Amount: A Maximum of 2 Level 60 Litre Bins per permit</i></p> <p>Size: No Set Limit</p>
KINA	<p>Amount: A Maximum of 4 Level 60 Litre Bins of Kina per permit</p> <p>Size: No Set Limit</p>

<i>PIPI – Cockles</i>	Amount: The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries Rules Size: See Recreational Fisheries Rules
<i>OYSTER – Rock & Pacific</i>	Amount: The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries Rules Size: Leave the larger ones
<i>SCALLOPS</i>	Amount: A Maximum of 50 per permit Size: Minimum Size of 4 Inches / 100 Mil Conditions: Scallops may not be taken out of season
<i>PAUA</i>	Amount: A Maximum of 50 per permit Size: Minimum Size of 4 Inches / 100 Mil
<i>CRAYFISH</i>	Amount: The same as set in the Recreational Fisheries Rules Size: Conditions: Crayfish marching may not be taken and females carrying eggs may not be taken
<i>FISH – Hand Line/Rod</i>	Amount: Limit to permit issue Size:
FISH – Net or Long Line	Amount: Limit to permit issue Size: Net must comply with the Recreational Fishing Regulations

13.5.1 Delicacy Kaimoana

- Scallops
- Pua
- Crayfish

13.6 Providing Applicants with Information

The Kaitiaki are responsible for providing all applicants with information relevant to their expedition. The following document, "Customary Fisheries Permit Terms & Conditions", is a document that must be given to each applicant and must be held by the applicant with the permit.

The following CF Unit Form is a suggestion for discussion.

NGATI KUTA AND PATUKEHA CUSTOMARY FISHERIES UNIT
Customary Fisheries Permit Terms & Conditions

When collecting seafood for customary purposes, the following rules and conditions shall apply. Failure you adhere to or uphold the rules & conditions may result in an investigation and/or formal complaint to the Ministry of Fisheries of any misconduct and/or other issues relevant to customary take.

- ☐ The person applying for the permit accepts full responsibility for the conduct of all divers, boat owners and the total amount of catch
- ☐ The applicant is also fully responsible for informing divers & boat owners of the conditions of the permit and the permitted catch
- ☐ You must carry your permit and this information sheet on board your boat for the entire duration of your seafood collecting expedition
- ☐ If there is more than one boat, the permit & information sheet must stay on board the boat that the applicant travels on and the applicant must inform the other boat/s of the area where they will be diving/fishing
- ☐ Should the divers of the other boat/s be investigated by MOF whilst out diving/fishing, the boat owner will have the responsibility to escort MOF to the boat that carries the applicant & permit
- ☐ If you are setting a net, long line or crayfish pot you must not alter or remove the ID Tag placed by the Kaitiaki. You must return with your net, long line and/or crayfish pot, at the stated time to the Kaitiaki
- ☐ Should you be investigated by MOF whilst out diving/fishing you must cooperate with their officers.
- ☐ If MOF question the permit in anyway, you should direct their officers to contact the Kaitiaki who issued the permit
- ☐ You must only collect seafood in areas identified by the Kaitiaki/Permit Issuer
- ☐ You may use dive bottles to collect seafood providing the Kaitiaki has identified this on the permit
- ☐ You must not sell any seafood collected and/or collect the seafood for commercial purposes or use in a commercial kitchen/restaurant
- ☐ Kaitiaki are authorised to count your catch upon your return to shore.
- ☐ You must report back to Kaitiaki immediately upon return with the divers, the boats & owners and also the total catch

- ☐ Your permit is only valid for one day which is the date stated on the permit
- ☐ **Caution:** Whilst the applicant is responsible for the customary fisheries permit, the divers & the total catch you should be aware that, if you take more kaimona than stated on your permit, the divers and boat owners will also become liable for prosecution under the Recreational Fisheries Regulations and boat/dive gear may be confiscated

13.7 Authorised Hui

Customary Fishery Permits can only be issued for the following Hui

- Tangi
- Unveilings
- Weddings
- Birthdays
- Koha to other Marae Hui
- Anniversaries
- Whanau Gatherings
- Wananga

13.8 Kaitiaki Summary Reports

Kaitiaki are required to make out a summary report when seafood collectors return to the landing area with their catch. The Kaitiaki will estimate how much seafood has been collected and record the information so that Kaitiaki will be able to summarise each month the exact amounts of seafood that has been harvested.

SAMPLE ONLY			
NGATI KUTA AND PATUKEHA CUSTOMARY FISHERIES UNIT			
Kaitiaki Monthly Summary Report			
SUMMARY FROM ____ / ____ / ____		TO ____ / ____ / ____	
Date Permit Number	Type of Seafood	Amount Permitted	Amount Taken

TOTALS Seafood Types	Total Amount Taken

Sample Form	
Date of Evaluation	Signed

Aim To better manage customary fisheries and encourage sustainable practices and kaitiakitanga application of the fish and shellfish stock

Method:

- Working with nga Hapu o Taumarere to co-ordinate and better manage the Mana Moana resources and environment
- Formalise a better communication network, working relationships and a who's who from each Hapu
- Identifying who should issue permits
- Establish a common set of rules on customary take

14.0 Tapoi I Tourism

Tourism is the economic heartbeat of the Bay of Islands. Most of this activity is centred around Paihia and Russell. The attraction is the heritage and idyllic conservation beauty which makes up the Bay of Islands. Tourists are interested in nature and the natural beauty including the "Hole in the Rock" Motukokako, which is a major tourist attraction. They also like to see wild life in their natural habitat. Tourist activities are numerous and seasonal particularly in summer as consumers migrate to the Bay of Islands for their holidays. For this reason, our management plan will aim to include the preservation of this unique heritage and the sustainability of it in harmony with commercial and recreational users.

The presence of the Wreck in Maunganui Bay presents another attraction for more tourists and for future economic development for Ngati Kuta in the eco-cultural-tourism world.

15.0 Ruku Kaiwhakamahi Hii I Small Fishing and Dive Tour Operator

Small charter fishing operators are small businesses who provide a service to recreational fishers and tourists. They operate for profit and employ staff. We are aware, that some local operators have adopted their own set of rules to encourage sustainability of fishing stocks. This is encouraging and an activity which Ngati Kuta and Patukeha supports.

15.1 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- Increasing numbers of charter operators
- Externally based operators who migrate into the Bay of Islands increasing (from Whangarei, Auckland)
- Increasing recreational users and take
- Favourite fishing spots can hammer resident fish stocks

Aims:

- work with local operators to build fish stocks and protect our sea and marine environment
- identify rest zones for fish and seek agreements with operators not to fish there
- clarify current practices and fish sizes that operators allow their customers to take
- gain better understanding of the industry and how it functions
- identify a plan that encourages good business outcomes for the operator whilst sustaining the stocks and natural environment
- create an operators database

Method:

- engage in discussion with local operators
- identify differences and work through the issues to seek good outcomes
- develop good working relationships and communication processes
- Education and raising awareness with customers on environmental causes and affects i.e.:
 - appropriate disposal of litter
 - only taking what you can consume
 - monitoring and discouraging waste
 - size & quantity limits

16.0 Kaiwhakamahi Tapoi I Large Tour Operators

Fullers are the largest commercial cruise boat operator in the Bay of Islands followed by Kings and Dolphin Discoveries. All operators employ their own standards and practices for their business. Our role is to ensure that their standards are consistent with our plans in taking care of the environment.

We understand the economic role they play for the area and the promotion of it. We would however, aim to identify how these large operators can re-invest in the protection and enhancement of environment for which their business is heavily dependent.

16.1 The Implementation Path

Issues:

- intruding on residential privacy
- reducing noise levels
- appropriate interaction with dolphins
- ad hoc beach landings
- sewerage discharge (see recommendations in section 13.1)
- oil & fuel spillage
- incorrect local history story telling
- hole in the rock royalties
- reinvesting in protection and enhancement of the environment
- issuing of dolphin watching licenses

Aims:

- engage with the operators to discuss our plans and issues

Methods:

- work with operators on their local history story telling and accuracy
- develop memorandum of understanding about privacy of our Marae and other Maori residents
- work with DOC and Min Fish to develop appropriate interaction with wild life and the environment standards.
- Negotiate royalties as payment for intellectual property title and access for "hole in the rock" cruises
- Develop a sewerage discharge unit with FNDC funded by environmental levies

- Keep updated by MSA on oil spill recovery unit and it's method of operating and efficiency of recovery.
 - Develop succession plans for school leavers into employment over time.
- Policy**
- No sewerage discharge from operators boats into the water

17.0 Me era atu mahi I Other Developments

17.1 Sewerage discharge

Issues:

- The discharging of treated sewerage from boat holding tanks into the waterway is an ongoing concern. Such activity will not be supported by Ngati Kuta and Patukeha as it contradicts the benchmarks of this plan. Although sewerage is treated, we believe treated sewerage does contaminate the waterways. Minor controls are currently in place whereby disposal is banned within the inlet (see maps) however greater control over dumping areas outside of the inlet must be identified and managed.

17.1.1 The Implementation Path

Aims:

- To develop land based holding tanks for disposal

Methods:

- Assessing the current holding tank infrastructure within the rohe and identifying function problems
- Assessing the impact that land based sewage will have on the land based resources
- Identifying designated areas outward of the inlet for discharging
- Utilising funds raised from the Environment Levies to upgrade existing land based holding tanks and to establish more of them

17.2 Underwater Power Cables

Issues:

- Underwater power cables have been previously laid within the rohe. The cable between Omakiwi in Rawhiti and Cable Bay on Urupukapuka Island remains unused and is now in a derelict state. New proposals loom whereby island residents of Moturua and Motukiekie Islands may apply for resource consents to lay new cables which will connect these homes to mainland electricity. Such development raises many issues and live wire instalments require strict controls to ensure public and marine safety.

17.2.1 The Implementation Path

Aim: To minimise disruption to the seabed and environment including wild life and to protect public access and recreational interaction

Methods:

- assessing each application through the existing resource consent process and according to the benchmarks and methods of this plan
- assessing the proposed activity against:
 - impacts on the environment, wild life,
 - cultural, spiritual & historical values
 - impacts to public and recreational access and activities
 - necessity

17.3 Marine Patrol

Issues:

- Tourism activities, shellfish poaching, pollution and contamination factors are ongoing issues.
- To date, solutions have not been identified and it has become evident that this is due to lack of finance. NRC, FNDC and MOF do not have the financial or human resources available to them to establish infrastructure and to employ full time rangers

Aims:

- To manage all activities to ensure the best possible protection of fish and wildlife species within the rohe.
- To utilise Ngati Kuta kaitiaki to monitor or patrol activities

Methods:

- monitoring current activities within the rohe
- researching and assessing the impacts of tourism on the fish and wildlife

Policy:

Recommendations

- *up-skill kaitiaki for patrol duties and forming a network with NRC, FNDC, DOC & MOF*
- *Manage the number of tourism licenses issued for use within the rohe*
- *Implementing traditional rahui methods of protection to protect and preserve fish and wildlife species by way of a "temporary closure" under section 186 of the Fisheries Settlement Act*
- *identifying the types of tourism activities for development within the rohe*
- *charging an annual environment levy for tour operators for beneficial use on environment enhancement within the rohe*

APPENDIX

Some of the document at

Pr

to suit this

971 Edition.
Matatiki (TM)

a as in hat.

The vowel **e** is pronounced like the *ea* in *leather* or *in ten*. Avoid the double sound of the vowel as found in *hay* and *hee*.
e.g. raw-he for rohe not roe-hee.

The vowel **i** is equivalent to the vowel sound in the English word *mink* or *hint*.
e.g. *mink* to sound the *i* in *rimu* or *hint* to sound the *i* in *pipi*

The vowel **o** is pronounced as the English word *awe*. Avoid all trace of the English pronunciation of *oh*! This is the most abused vowel sound when one is pronouncing Maori words, take great care with it. Not *poe-whiri*.
e.g. *paw-whiri* for *powhiri* OR *maw-ana* for *moana*





The vowel **u** is pronounced like the double *o* in *moon*. e.g. *hoo-l* for *hui*.
Avoid saying it like the *ew* in *few*

ng is a softer sound than in English, especially with regard to the *g*. The sound is similar to the middle *ng* in *singing*. (Tuhoe iwi have a different pronunciation)

Groups	Roopu
Administration	<i>Roopu Whakahaere (W30 conduct business)</i>
Advisory Group	<i>Roopu Whakatakoto Korero</i>
Artistic Skills/Culture	<i>Roopu Mahi Toi</i>
Communication	<i>Roopu Panui/Roopu Whakaatu</i>
Economics Advisory Group	<i>Roopu Arataki (W14 lead/guide/conduct/point out)</i> <i>Roopu Arataki (W14 lead/guide/conduct/point out)</i>
Education	<i>Roopu whai matauranga</i>
Finance	<i>Roopu Rangaputea</i>
Fisheries Unit	<i>Roopu Ahumoana</i>
Law Unit	<i>Roopu Ture</i>
Resource Management Unit	<i>Roopu Hapai Puna Taonga</i> <i>Roopu Hapai Puna Taonga</i>
Social Services	<i>Roopu Taha Tangata</i>
Sport	<i>Roopu Hakinakina (W32, sport, enjoy oneself)</i>

Kupu Māori	Māori Translated
atea	<i>the area from the gate to the steps of the wharehui</i>
hapu	<i>(W36 - section of a large tribe, secondary tribe), collection of related families within one tribe</i>
hikoi	<i>(W50 - step), used by Ngati Kuta RMU when inspecting a site development</i>
hui	<i>(W66 - congregate, meet, assemble) gatherings, discussions</i>
iwī	<i>(W80 -nation, people), collective of hapu, tribe</i>
kaitiaki	<i>(Kai W86 - prefix to transitive verbs to form nouns denoting an agent - tiaki - guard, keep) guardian, caretaker</i>
kaitiakitanga	<i>absolute sovereign guardianship, caretaking</i>
karakia	<i>(WP98 - charm, spell, incantation). In modern terms applied to public worship, prayer.</i>
kaumatua	<i>(W106 - adult, old woman or man), respected elders (male or female), holders of knowledge and life experiences</i>
kaupapa	<i>(W107 - plan, scheme, proposal), topic, subject</i>
koiwi	<i>(W128 - bone), human remains</i>
kuia	<i>respected older women, holders of knowledge and life experiences</i>
mana	<i>(WP172 - authority, control, influence, prestige, power etc), status, dignity, respect, derived from God</i>
mana moana	<i>traditional status, rights (including ownership and responsibilities in respect of water, physical and natural resources within their traditional marine territories), derived from the ancestors and God</i>
mana whenua	<i>traditional status, rights (including ownership and responsibilities in respect of lands, physical and natural resources within their traditional land territories), derived from the ancestors and God.</i>
manaaki	<i>(W172 - show respect or kindness to)</i>
manaakitanga	<i>the act of showing respect or kindness to, encompassing care</i>
marae	<i>(W180 - enclosed space in front of a house, courtyard, village common) Modern usage for whole building complex and surrounding grounds.</i>
matua	<i>male parent, father or uncle including any male cousin of one's mother, father, aunts or uncles</i>

moana	<i>(W204 - sea, lake) In our case, salt waterways.</i>
mokopuna	<i>(W208 - grandchild, child of a son, daughter, nephew, niece etc)</i>
Nga hapu o Taumarere	<i>Collective of hapu within the Taumarere district/region of Eastern Bay of Islands</i>
Nga hapu o Taumarere	
powhiri	<i>(W300 - wave, beckon anyone to come in, welcome)</i>
powhiri	<i>Modern usage for official welcome</i>
rangatahi	<i>incorrectly used to describe 'young people'.</i>
rangatahi	<i>(W323 - fishing net). From a popular saying 'Ka pu te ruha, ka hao te rangatahi' - 'When the old net is worn and lying in a heap, use a new net to catch fish,' comparison with young people being the 'new net.' It is preferable to use tai-tamariki, tamataane, tama</i>
rangatahi	<i>waahine to describe young age groups.</i>
rangatahi	
rangatahi	<i>Children and grandchildren of the elders whose age groups range from young adults to elders, holders of modern techniques and technology.</i>
rangatira	<i>(W323 - chief etc, person of good breeding, well-born, noble), leader, inherent status, one who has the ability to keep the people together</i>
rangatira	
rangatira	<i>(W323 - evidence of good breeding and greatness), chieftainship including sovereignty, rights of self determination.</i>
rangatiratanga	<i>(W344 - boundary) traditional domain, area, district or region of a tribe</i>
rohe	
rohe	<i>spiritual side</i>
taha wairua	<i>(W370 - cause, reason, means, origin, beginning) topic, issue</i>
take	<i>(W376 - child, opposed to adult), children within the age groups from young adult to newborn</i>
tamariki	<i>people of the land, those who hold mana whenua in an area.</i>
tamariki	<i>(W379 - cry, weep, utter a plaintive cry, fret)</i>
tangata whenua	<i>Modern usage - the formalities and procedures surrounding the demise of a person from the time of death to the burial. Often interpreted incorrectly as "the funeral day."</i>
tangi	<i>(W381 - property, anything highly prized)</i>
tangi	<i>Modern usage - valued resources (land, sea, rivers, springs, mountains), prized and priceless possessions both material and non-material.</i>
tangi	
tangi	<i>the above, handed down</i>
taonga	<i>place, district, region in Eastern Bay of Islands</i>
taonga	<i>place where the male elders sit to receive and welcome all visitors and guests to the marae. 'Taumata' is a Taitokerau term as opposed to</i>
taonga	<i>'Paepae' used in southern areas.</i>
taonga	<i>the Maori language</i>
taonga tuku iho	<i>younger brother or male cousin of a male, younger sister or female cousin of a female</i>
Taumarere	<i>(W416 - rule, plan, method, custom, habit, etc), customary and/or traditional correct ways of doing things, protocol, aspects</i>
taumata kaumatua	<i>elder brother or male cousin of a male, elder sister of a female etc)</i>
taumata kaumatua	<i>special and sacred place</i>
taumata kaumatua	<i>(W477 - spirit, PM Ryan - attitude, mood, soul)</i>
Te Reo	<i>(W479 - lore of the tohunga, occult arts),</i>
teina	<i>Modern usage - learning and educational seminars</i>
teina	<i>mother, aunt (including any female cousin of one's father, mother, aunts, and uncles)</i>
tikanga	
tikanga	
tuakana	
tuakana	
wahi tapu	
wairua	
wananga	
wananga	
whaea	
whaea	

whai korero	<i>make a speech, oration, rhetoric</i>
whanau	<i>family group, extended family</i>
whanaungatanga	<i>kinship, relationship through whakapapa, bonds</i>
whenua	<i>land, placenta</i>
Kupu Hou	New Terms
Acknowledgments	<i>Kupu whakamihi</i>
Adolescence	<i>Taitamariki</i>
Adults	<i>Nga hua kua pakari</i>
Air	<i>Hau Takiwa</i>
Areas of shared interest	<i>Te Wahanga ki nga Rohe</i>
Beginning or Introduction	<i>Timatanga</i>
Babyhood	<i>Whaanautanga</i>
Capacity Building	<i>Whakawhanuitanga mo te Hapu</i>
Childhood	<i>Tamarikitanga</i>
Coastal and Rural	<i>Kaupapa mo te Tahamoana me te Taiwhenua</i>
Management	<i>Kaupapa mo te Tahamoana me te Taiwhenua</i>
Company of	<i>Hunga</i>
persons/people	
Consent processing fees	<i>Utu mo nga raupapa mahi</i>
Cultural, spiritual and	<i>Ahuatanga mo nga wahitapu</i>
historical values, sites of	<i>Ahuatanga mo nga wahitapu</i>
cultural significance,	<i>Ahuatanga mo nga wahitapu</i>
wahitapu and	<i>Ahuatanga mo nga wahitapu</i>
archaeology	
Disabled	<i>Hunga hauaa</i>
Disputes	<i>Tautohe</i>
Environmental Levy Fund	<i>Taake mo te Taiao</i>
Employment	<i>Hunga Mahi</i>
Environment	<i>Nga Painga mo te Taiao</i>
Management Baselines	<i>Nga Painga mo te Taiao</i>
(quality of water, etc)	
From the womb	<i>Mai i te koopu</i>
Genetic engineering	<i>Raweke ira tangata</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	 <i>ira – life principle</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	 <i>ira atua – supernatural beings</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	 <i>ira tangata – mortals</i>
<i>Genetic engineering</i>	 <i>raweke – meddle or interfere with</i>
Hapu Management Plan	<i>Whakatau kaupapa mo te Hapu</i>
Hapu Project Plan	<i>Whakararangi kaupapa</i>
<i>Hapu Project Plan</i>	<i>Whakararangi kaupapa</i>
Hapu Registration	<i>Rehita Ingoa</i>
Health	<i>Hauora</i>
Hospitalization	<i>Atawhai turoro</i>
Housing	<i>Whare noho</i>
Infirm	<i>Hunga turoro</i>
Knowledge repository	<i>He pataka Maatautanga</i>
Land Management	<i>Kaupapa mo te Whenua</i>
Mental health	<i>Oranga hinengaro</i>
Message from the	<i>Whakamarama mai i te Taumata</i>
Taumata	
Mission Statement	<i>Uaratanga (desires/values, also aims & objects)</i>
Occupational training	<i>Whakawai mahi (train/teach/practice)</i>

Operations	<i>Nga Take whakamahi</i>
Our Ethics	<i>O matou matatika (P44 TM)</i>
Overall Strategic Direction	<i>Tirohanga Whanui</i>
Post natal	<i>No te whaanautanga</i>
Protocol consultation	<i>Kaupapa hei whiriwhiri</i>
Public safety	<i>Whakatupato mo te katoa</i>
Resource	<i>puna taonga</i>
Resource consent application	<i>Puna taonga hei tono</i>
Resource Consent Consultation	<i>Puna Taonga hei Whiriwhiri</i>
Restoration and preservation	<i>Kaupapa Taiao hei Whiriwhiri</i>
Recording Minutes	<i>Whakahou me te Tiaki</i>
Statutory Planning	<i>Whakahou me te Tiaki</i>
Processes and Instruments	<i>Nga Pepa Whai Tikanga</i>
Strategic/strategy	<i>Wahanga ki te Ture</i>
The Process (W343 put in order, arrange etc)	<i>Wahanga ki te Ture</i>
Toddlers/infants	<i>Rauhanga (W329 cunning, resourceful)</i>
Tourism	<i>Te Raupapa Mahi</i>
Transport	<i>Te Raupapa Mahi</i>
Vision	<i>Nga kohungahunga</i>
Fishing Commercial	<i>Tapoi (W384 be travelled round)</i>
Fresh water fisheries	<i>Waka hari</i>
Hapu Economic Opportunities	<i>Whakaaro Whakamua</i>
Game fishing	<i>Hii Ika Aru Moni</i>
Marine Research	<i>Tuna me nga Kewai</i>
Marine Reserve	<i>Hapu Roopu</i>
Ngati Kuta customary fisheries	<i>Arataki</i>
Recreational fishing	<i>Hii mako, mango, takeketonga (W371 Bay of Islands swordfish)</i>
Recreational Fishing regulations	<i>Rangahau Moana (W323 see, search out, pursue)</i>
Small fishing and Dive	<i>Aapure moana (W13 patch, circumscribed area)</i>
Tour Operator	<i>Tauranga ika mo Ngati Kuta</i>
Water Management	<i>Kaupapa tauranga ika mo Ngati Kuta</i>
Large Tour operators	<i>Hii Ika Hakinakina</i>
Other developments	<i>Hii Ika Ture Arahi</i>
	<i>Hii Ika Ture Arahi</i>
	<i>Ruku Kaiwhakamahi</i>
	<i>Ruku Kaiwhakamahi</i>
	<i>Atawhai i te moana</i>
	<i>Kaiwhakamahi Tapoi</i>
	<i>Me era atu Mahi</i>

*Please note that Patukeha included (in their entirety) the two documents listed below as part of this submission.

Because these documents total 809 pages, and they are publicly available, we provide the below website links instead:

6. Northland Regional Council Coastal Plan
[Regional Coastal Plan - Northland Regional Council](#)
7. Proposed NRC Regional Plan
[proposed-regional-plan-february-2024.pdf](#)



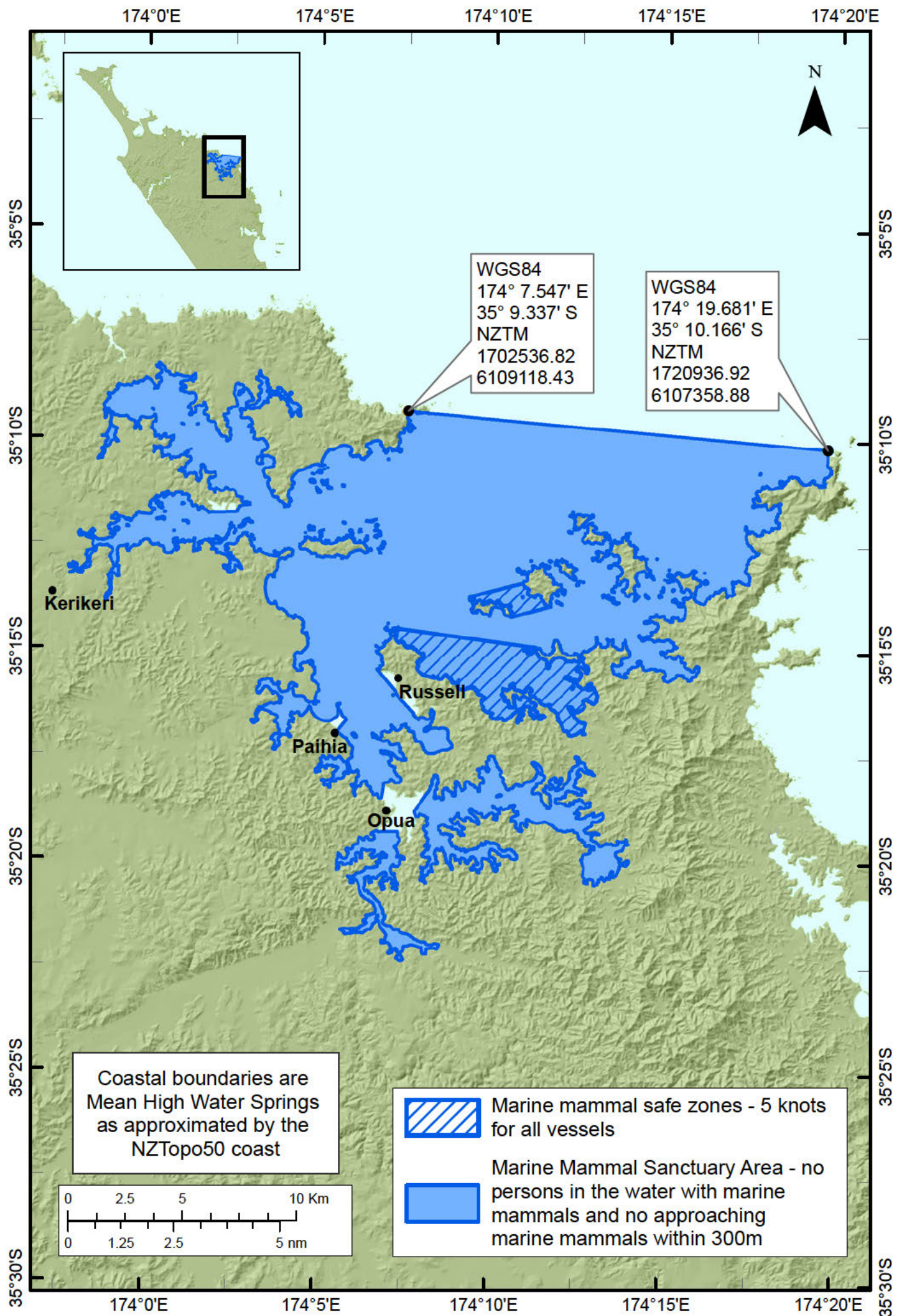
**Controlled Area
Te Rāwhiti Zone**

- Controlled Area Extent Point
- Controlled Area Te Rāwhiti Zone

Date: 12/06/2023
Produced by: Spatial Intelligence
Reference: r230172
Coordinate System: WGS 1984 Mercator 41



Data Attribution:
This map uses data sourced from LINZ
under CC-BY 4.0.



**Map of Te Pēwhairangi (Bay of Islands)
Marine Mammal Sanctuary**

From: Kallam Brown <s 9(2)(a) z>
Date: Tuesday, 9 April 2024 at 2:56 PM
To: Ngati Kuta Hapu
<ngatikutahapu@gmail.com>, patukeha.office@gmail.com <patukeha.office@gmail.com>
Cc: Hamish Lewis s 9(2)(a) >
Subject: Marina Discussion with Patukeha and Ngati Kuta

Hi all

Just following up from our discussion held next to the Kaingahoa Marae on Monday 25th March.

Bob had mentioned at the meeting that he was interested in having formal notes/minutes from our discussion circulated for review and sign off by the two Hapu groups. Please take this as a formal record that a conversation was held and to provide you all with the confidence that we are not trying to claim any formal consultation process has occurred.

- Our position remains the same as outlined in our document circulated on the 1st March 2024 and then discussed again at the meeting on the 25th March 2024 that position being that we are in the very early/conceptual stages of a development proposal for a marina in Waipiro Bay and we welcome discussion and input from Ngati Kuta and Patukeha as the predominant Hapu groups for this area.
- We expanded that position somewhat at the meeting on the 25th March 2024, by talking to the ability for a partnership to occur in relation to this proposed development although no specific partnership structures or principles were discussed.
- Our take-aways from the meeting were two-fold
 - Firstly, that a healthy discussion of the proposed opportunity occurred at a high level.
 - Secondly, that Patukeha and Ngati Kuta would have internal hui to consolidate a list of questions and comments that will be provided to the developers for consideration and response. This response from the developers would likely be provided at a more formal meeting on the Marae at a date to be confirmed.

Please let me know if you do not agree with any of the above and also how you are progressing with the review of our 1st March 2024 document and follow up questions that are going to be provided to us for review and response.

Regards

Kallam Brown

s 9(2)(a)

[azuma.nz](https://www.azuma.nz)

[NEW ZEALAND \(/NEWS/NATIONAL\)](/news/national/) / [LOCAL DEMOCRACY REPORTING \(/NEWS/LDR\)](/news/lldr/)

NZ faces \$9.4b hit from invasive caulerpa, analysis shows

11:36 am on 8 May 2025

**Susan Botting (/authors/susan-botting)**, Local Democracy Reporter✉ susan.botting@nzme.co.nz (<mailto:susan.botting@nzme.co.nz>)[subject=NZ%20faces%20\\$9.4b%20hit%20from%20invasive%20caulerpa%2C%20analysis%20shows](mailto:susan.botting@nzme.co.nz?subject=NZ%20faces%20$9.4b%20hit%20from%20invasive%20caulerpa%2C%20analysis%20shows)

Invasive caulerpa seaweed in Bay of Islands' Omākiwi Cove. Photo: LDR

New Zealand's economy risks a \$9.4 billion hit as the invasive seaweed (<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/ldr/495382/caulerpa-invasive-seaweed-threat-spreading-what-you-need-to-know>) caulerpa gains an increasing stronghold (<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/national/559821/volunteers-warn-more-is-needed-to-halt-invasive-seaweed-species>) - with reports of it now spreading to the Bay of Islands tourist town of Russell.

That's the stark warning after new NZIER analysis showed caulerpa's spread will impact tourism and recreation, commercial fishing, aquaculture and ecosystems if more is not done to stop the spread.

The analysis is part of a New Zealand-first iwi, community and council consortium December business case (<https://static1.squarespace.com/static/64f682949205c459436df430/t/67f46a928e3f2740e0e85e5d/1744071370302/Fighting+Invasive+12122024.pdf>) to the government pushing for a co-ordinated, scaled up approach.

The heavyweight consortium wants up to \$215 million - \$43 million annually - for the first five years of a 30-year fight against caulerpa, which would be funded through taxpayer contributions, local rates and vessel levies.

But Biosecurity Minister Andrew Hoggard has challenged the \$9.4 billion economic impact figure.

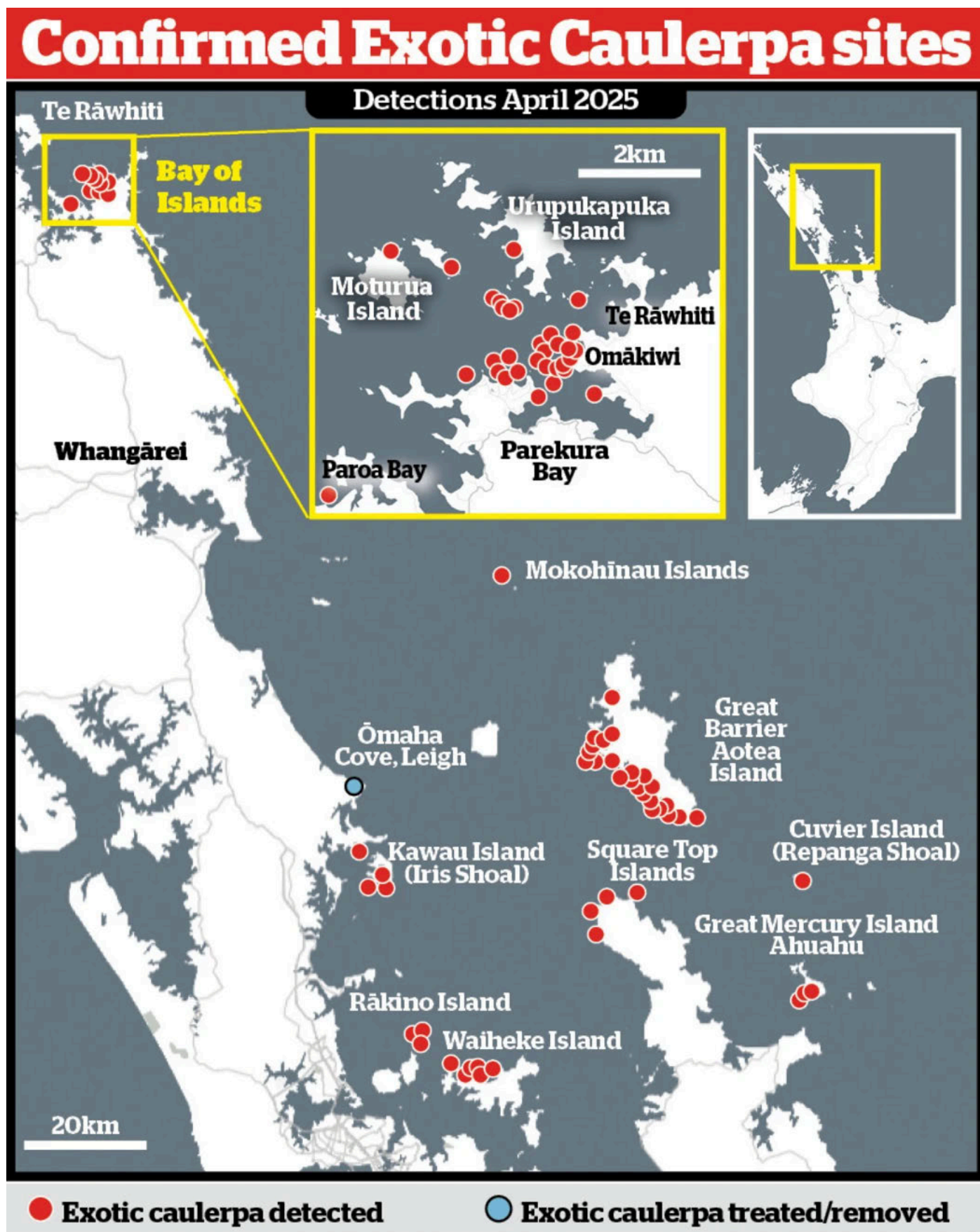
"The impacts of exotic caulerpa in New Zealand are still not fully understood and long-term studies are underway to understand this better.

"Given that we are still studying how caulerpa behaves and affects local marine ecology it would be extremely difficult to identify a cost with any certainty," Hoggard said.

Hoggard would not comment on how much money the government would be putting towards caulerpa in the 22 May Budget.

"The government always faces difficult choices about what to fund and I cannot discuss Budget ahead of its release later this month," Hoggard said.

Exotic caulerpa has been described by independent scientific experts as the country's most serious marine biosecurity invasion in a lifetime.



Invasive exotic caulerpa seaweed now covers the equivalent of 2,425 rugby fields in more than 90 sites along the upper North Island's coastline. Photo: LDR / NZ Herald

Northland-based Conquer Caulerpa Trust chair Verdon Kelliher said the situation was desperate and the government wasn't doing enough to remedy the issue.

"We're talking about major impacts," Kelliher said.

"Without immediate, co-ordinated action, our fishing grounds, tourism industry and cultural heritage face unprecedented damage."

The caulerpa threat area stretches 1500 kilometres of coastline from Cape Reinga to East Cape, including the 'golden triangle' economic powerhouse of Auckland, Waikato and Bay of Plenty, as well as Northland.

It has spread to more than 90 locations (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/68364/direct>) from the Bay of Islands to the Mercury Islands, off the upper Coromandel Peninsula.

Ex-Tropical Cyclone Tam washed more than 500 tonnes of caulerpa ashore in thick carpets in the Bay of Islands' Omākiwi Cove and adjacent Whiorau Bay over Easter.

Local volunteers rushed to remove it due to fears of it creating a growth explosion.

The consortium wants a strengthened government approach to caulerpa with a stronger marine biosecurity framework to co-ordinate a scaled-up fight.



Great Barrier Island's Tryphena was once a haven for boaties to anchor, before that was banned after New Zealand's first discovery of exotic caulerpa on the island in 2021. Photo: LDR / NZME

Its business case, by consultants Martin Jenkins and based on the NZIER economic analysis, was developed over four months by Hauraki Gulf-based Pou Rāhui iwi (Ngāti Pāoa, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Tamaterā and Ngā Tai ki Tāmaki) with financial and/or other input also including from marine scientists and Northland Regional Council, Auckland Council, Waikato Regional Council, Thames-Coromandel District Council, Hauraki District Council, DOC plus affected industries.

Hoggard met Pou Rāhui iwi and councils behind the business case in March.

He said the meeting had been "very useful" and asked officials to consider the business case and provide advice to him "in due course".

Pou Rāhui iwi spokesperson Herearoa Skipper said the cost of the government not taking appropriate action outweighed the cost of doing so.

"The arrival of caulerpa represents an unprecedented threat to our marine environment," Skipper said.

"We are deeply concerned about the lack of a comprehensive approach to fighting this seaweed species and its potentially devastating impact."

Pou Rāhui iwi spokesperson Herearoa Skipper. Photo: LDR

NZIER modelling suggested that without proper intervention, \$9.4 billion of the upper North Island's natural capital asset value could be lost over the next 30 years.



That includes an \$8.8 billion recreational and tourism loss including recreational fishing - fish biomass has been halved in overseas caulerpa infestations.

Recreational boating would be impacted with significant movement restrictions, the report said.

There would be a \$118 million loss for commercial fishing, \$24 million for aquaculture and \$489.4 million in ecosystem services degradation, NZIER said.



Huge carpet like caulerpa clumps washed up at Om ` kiwi Cove by ex Tropical Cyclone Tam over Easter. Photo: Supplied / LDR

Roles and responsibilities in the caulerpa fight were not clear and regulatory barriers often prevented rapid responses. Traditional frameworks failed to adequately incorporate mātauranga Māori and invasive species funding had been reactive rather than proactive, the report said.

New Zealand's first mainland exotic caulerpa infestation (<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/national/490962/bay-of-islands-shudders-as-caulerpa-identified-in-more-than-a-dozen-locations>) was identified in Omākiwi Cove in the eastern Bay of Islands in May 2023.

More than 1000ha (<https://www.nzherald.co.nz/northern-advocate/news/caulerpa-seaweed-bay-of-islands-anchoring-ban-now-in-place-to-fight-threat/3X5I5ODPYZBNRIIWNXCGGZFGGY/>) - the equivalent of 1429 rugby fields - have been closed to boat anchoring since June 2023 to help stop its spread.

Sightings of caulerpa have now been reported outside this anchoring ban area including Russell's Kororarēka Bay, about 10 kilometres by boat from Omākiwi Cove.

It's also been reported at Long Beach (Oneroa) and Tāpeka Point.

"And it's highly likely that additional beaches are affected but remain unreported," Kelliher said.

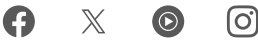
Hoggard said the caulerpa that had been shown globally to create dense monocultures were different species from those causing issues in New Zealand - where there was no clear evidence the marine pest was overgrowing seagrass.

Biosecurity New Zealand, mana whenua, regional councils, affected communities and other agencies had invested a huge amount of effort and money to tackle the situation, he said.

The government had put more than \$20 million towards efforts to understand the pest, contain its spread and develop new technologies to remove it, Hoggard said.

World-leading technology was also helping to remove different types of caulerpa infestations including the development of a large-scale suction dredge in the Bay of Islands.

JOIN & FOLLOW RNZ



Sign up to RNZ Newsletters

RNZ STATIONS

- National
- Concert
- RNZ Pacific
- Parliament - live stream

ON DEMAND

- Latest on demand radio
- Latest podcasts
- Latest video

HOW TO WATCH & LISTEN

- Audio help
- Radio
- Follow our podcasts
- Sky, Freeview & Satellite
- YouTube
- RNZ apps for iPhone and Android
- RNZ Flash Briefing for Amazon Alexa
- RNZ News for Google Assistant

ABOUT RNZ

- About
- Contact
- Audience Feedback and Complaints
- Media Releases
- Awards
- Jobs

[RNZ Your Media Matters](#)

[Local Democracy Reporting](#)

[RNZ Commissioning](#)

[RNZ Emergency](#)

[Terms of use](#)

© Copyright Radio New Zealand 2024



[NEW ZEALAND \(/NEWS/NATIONAL\)](#) / [TE AO MĀORI \(/NEWS/TE-MANU-KORIHI\)](#)

Volunteers warn more is needed to halt invasive seaweed species

7:43 pm on 3 May 2025

[Saturday Morning \(/authors/saturday-morning\)](#)

[@SaturdayRNZ \(https://twitter.com/@SaturdayRNZ\)](#) [✉ saturday@rnz.co.nz \(mailto:saturday@rnz.co.nz?subject=Volunteers%20warn%20more%20is%20needed%20to%20halt%20invasive%20seaweed%20species\)](mailto:saturday@rnz.co.nz)



[RNZ Online \(/authors/rnz-online\)](#)



Ngāti Kuta volunteers cleared up hundreds of tonnes of the invasive seaweed caulerpa, after the ex-Tropical Cyclone Tam weather system roared through Northland. Photo: Supplied Ngāti Kuta, Patuketa

A hapū tackling the invasive seaweed caulerpa in the Bay of Islands warns it will spread to the rest of the country, devastating coastal environments and economies, unless more is invested in stopping it short where it is now.

When hundreds of tonnes of caulerpa washed ashore after the storms caused by ex-Tropical Cyclone Tam it was a shock to many, except Arana Rewha and Viki Heta.

Rewha is the chair of Ngāti Kuta hapū - and an award winning kaitiaki. He's also the first person to discover caulerpa up there after it was first found at Great Barrier in 2021.

After caulerpa broke free from the seabed in the storm two weeks ago, Rewha and fellow kaitiaki, Heta, quickly sprang into action, organising volunteers to remove it from Ōmakiwi Cove.

The 'sea pest' had plagued Ōmakiwi Cove since May 2023, they said, and was already having detrimental impacts on biodiversity, especially because of its ability to rapidly smother shellfish beds.

"It suffocates everything. It's just devastating it's an environmental disaster," Heta said.

If caulerpa continued to spread to nearby bays, people in coastal areas who depend on seafood would suffer, Rewha said.

"Right now in the Bay of Islands, you can't even anchor your boat, because of the risk of caulerpa spreading.

"If we were to lose our coastline to caulerpa, it will greatly affect our economy and everyday living."

More than \$20m had been allocated towards caulerpa control, the Ministry for Primary Industries said, the biggest response to a marine species to date.

But Rewha and Heta said that was not enough, and there needed to be more investment into action, instead of just research.

Rewha speculated it could end up being a billion-dollar clean-up.

"It's a beast. It grows so fast and it's going to be so expensive to get rid of. But it's a threat to the whole country."

They warned that the longer the government held off on eliminating caulerpa, the more costly it would get.

Sign up for Ngā Pitopito Kōrero, a daily newsletter (<https://radionz.us6.list-manage.com/subscribe?u=211a938dcf3e634ba2427dde9&id=b3d362e693>) **curated by our editors and delivered straight to your inbox every weekday.**

JOIN & FOLLOW RNZ



Sign up to RNZ Newsletters

RNZ STATIONS

HOW TO WATCH & LISTEN

[National](#)

[Concert](#)

[RNZ Pacific](#)

[Parliament - live stream](#)

ON DEMAND

[Latest on demand radio](#)

[Latest podcasts](#)

[Latest video](#)

[Audio help](#)

[Radio](#)

[Follow our podcasts](#)

[Sky, Freeview & Satellite](#)

[YouTube](#)

[RNZ apps for iPhone and Android](#)

[RNZ Flash Briefing for Amazon Alexa](#)

[RNZ News for Google Assistant](#)

ABOUT RNZ

[About](#)

[Contact](#)

[Audience Feedback and Complaints](#)

[Media Releases](#)

[Awards](#)

[Jobs](#)

[RNZ Your Media Matters](#)

[Local Democracy Reporting](#)

[RNZ Commissioning](#)

[RNZ Emergency](#)

[Terms of use](#)

© Copyright Radio New Zealand 2024



[NEW ZEALAND \(/NEWS/NATIONAL\)](#) / [ENVIRONMENT \(/NEWS/ENVIRONMENT\)](#)

Invasive seaweed caulerpa found in new location in Bay of Islands

8:32 pm on 31 March 2025

[Luka Forman \(/authors/luka-forman\)](#), Journalist

✉ Luka.Forman@rnz.co.nz (<mailto:Luka.Forman@rnz.co.nz>)

subject=Invasive%20seaweed%20caulerpa%20found%20in%20new%20location%20in%20Bay%20of%20Islands)



Caulerpa on the Paroa Bay seabed. Photo: Supplied / Conquer Caulerpa Charitable Trust

The invasive seaweed caulerpa has been found in a new location in the Bay of Islands, sparking fears it could spread quickly through boating hubs around Paihia and Russell.

The exotic weed was first discovered in New Zealand on Great Barrier Island in 2021, and has raised concerns because it spreads quickly and smothers all marine life (<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/ldr/495382/caulerpa-invasive-seaweed-threat-spreading-what-you-need-to-know>).

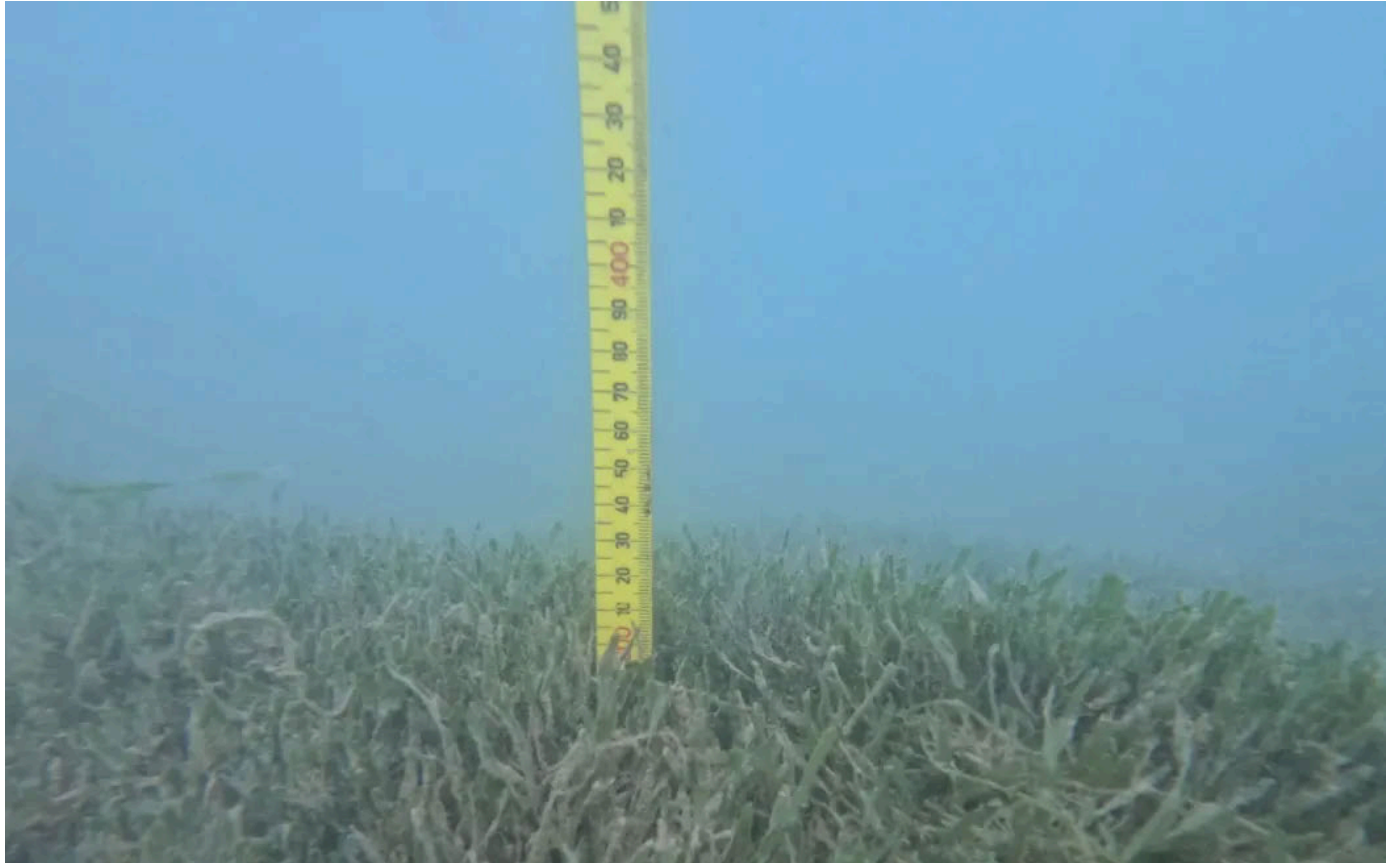
It has now been discovered by divers in Paroa Bay, only a few kilometres away from Russell in the Bay of Islands.

The government recently spent \$10 million on new technology (<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/ldr/543483/millions-being-thrown-at-bay-of-islands-caulerpa-control-as-pest-seaweed-spreads>) to help fight the weed, but a local charity said more was needed to help monitor and eradicate it.

Verdon Kelliher is chair of the Conquer Caulerpa charitable trust, which was set up to fight the invasive weed in Northland.

The divers they have contracted to monitor it recently discovered a new infestation in Paroa Bay.

"It starts at 30 metres out from the shore, and it's pretty dense out to around 300 metres. It's taken a pretty good foothold on the ocean floor, ranging up to around 15 centimetres," Kelliher said.



Caulerpa on the Paroa Bay seabed. Photo: Supplied / Conquer Caulerpa Charitable Trust

If it spread to nearby bays around Russell and Paihia, that would be bad news, Kelliher said.

"That's obviously a main thoroughfare going through there. You could imagine it could easily spread to multiple other places as the boats that are coming in and out of there go to lots of different destinations," he said.

The trust recently raised \$50,000 for survey work, but contract divers did not come cheap, Kelliher said.

"They cost us \$5600 a day, so you can see how long they will last on the money we have and then we run dry."

The new discovery of caulerpa underscored the importance of continued surveillance to find out where else the weed has spread to, he said.

He was also concerned about what would happen after the government's \$10 million fund to trial new dredging, UV light and chlorine treatment technology ran out.

"What's not known very well by anyone is there's actually no money post those trials to actually use them. And there's no guarantee that the government is going to fund it in its' budget for next year."



Caulerpa on the Paroa Bay seabed. Photo: Supplied / Conquer Caulerpa Charitable Trust

Michelle Elboz (Ngati Kuta, Patukeha) is a trustee on the Conquer Caulerpa trust and said the spread of caulerpa threatened the Māori way of life in the Bay of Islands.

"The waters out here are our kai basket. That's where we get a lot of our food, the fishing, the shellfish, it'll all be gone."

The trust is hoping to raise \$600,000 to keep divers in the water for six months - which Elboz admitted would be difficult, but necessary.

"The bottom line is - if we don't, what happens? Once caulerpa is at 100 percent coverage there is very little alive underneath it."

Northland Regional Council chair Geoff Crawford said if the community could raise significant funding, that would encourage the government to keep up their end of the bargain.

"The government's keeping their cards close to their chest. Because once this technology is developed and it's proven, the expectation from society that this will go ahead and eradicate it in the North Island is a very expensive bill.

"We could be looking at up to \$100 million, so leveraging support from society would be a move in the right direction."

The council has been working with local contractor Johnson bros to develop the new dredging technology, and hopes to have it ready to go by May.

Sign up for Ngā Pitopito Kōrero, a daily newsletter (<https://radionz.us6.list-manage.com/subscribe?u=211a938dcf3e634ba2427dde9&id=b3d362e693>) **curated by our editors and delivered straight to your inbox every weekday.**

JOIN & FOLLOW RNZ



Sign up to RNZ Newsletters

RNZ STATIONS

- National
- Concert
- RNZ Pacific
- Parliament - live stream

ON DEMAND

- Latest on demand radio
- Latest podcasts
- Latest video

HOW TO WATCH & LISTEN

- Audio help
- Radio
- Follow our podcasts
- Sky, Freeview & Satellite
- YouTube
- RNZ apps for iPhone and Android
- RNZ Flash Briefing for Amazon Alexa
- RNZ News for Google Assistant

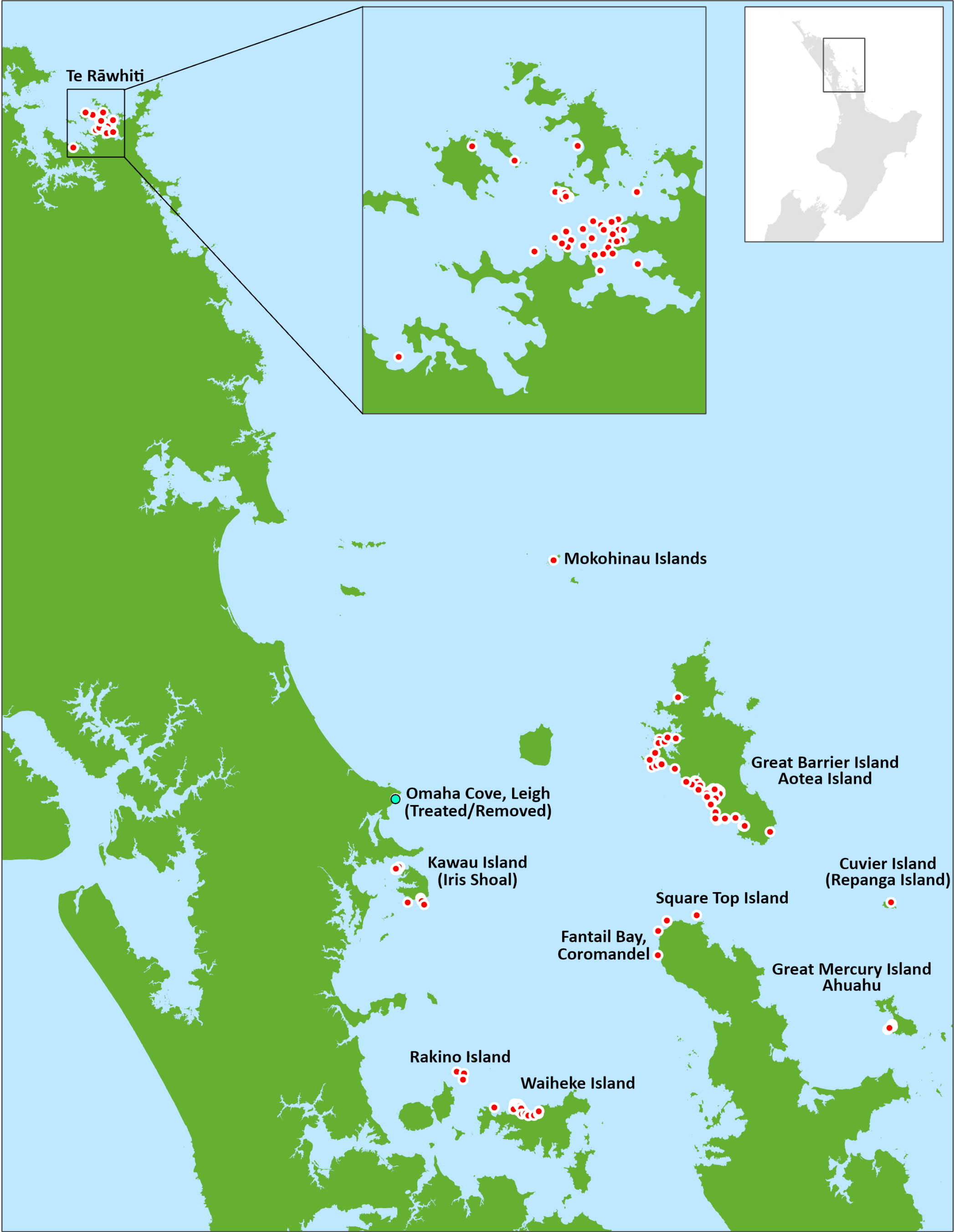
ABOUT RNZ

- About
- Contact
- Audience Feedback and Complaints
- Media Releases
- Awards
- Jobs
- RNZ Your Media Matters
- Local Democracy Reporting
- RNZ Commissioning
- RNZ Emergency

Terms of use

© Copyright Radio New Zealand 2024





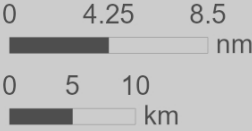
Exotic Caulerpa Detections April 2025



Exotic caulerpa detected



Exotic caulerpa treated/removed



Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

5th May 2025

Nga hapū o Ngāti Kuta me Patukeha
Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent my Hakaraia whanau of Te Huruhi and Orokawa and Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū, and am authorised to provide this submission.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapū, as it incorporates my views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,
Abby O'Neill

3/5/2025

I would like to express my opposition to this marina .

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views. I am from Ngati Kuta .

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

It will not create a great monetary gain for either the council or the people of the area . Only the developers will benefit . Ongoing costs caused by the marina will be shouldered by our community such as roads and access etc.

it will destroy a natural beautiful resource and take this away from our future generations to turn it into a place for wealthy people from other areas to park their boats

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Adrienne Giacon

s 9(2)(a)

1st May 2025

Kia Ora

Ko Aroha Ruka toku ingoa. No Patukeha me Ngati Kuta te Hapu.

This email is to clarify my reasons for opposing the Waipiro Bay Marine and remove it from the Fast track bill.

The reasons includes:

- Environmental concerns: harm to marine ecosystems, increased pollution, or loss of biodiversity.
- Cultural concerns: impact on wāhi tapu or sites of significance to tangata whenua.
- Social/community impact: disruption to local community life, loss of access to fishing or recreation.
- Economic concerns: potential harm to local livelihoods or unfair development practices.

Aroha Ruka

From: Betje Hurikino

Affiliation: Individual of Te Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta

Submission in Opposition to the Waipiro Bay Marina Proposal

0.1 I write to formally oppose the proposal for the Waipiro Bay Marina as well as its inclusion in Schedule 2B of the Fast-track Approvals Bill.

0.2 This submission is made in my personal capacity as a descendant of Te Wharerahi, a beneficiary of the neighbouring Orokawa 3C1 and Orokawa 3C2B land blocks and an active member of Te Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta hapū, who are tangata whenua of the Īpīpiri (eastern Bay of Islands) region, encompassing Waipiro Bay and the wider Te Rāwhiti coastline.

0.3 This coastline forms the heart of our rohe moana, a place of enduring cultural, spiritual, and environmental significance, over which we continue to exercise tikanga-based authority and responsibilities.

1. Cultural and Treaty Significance

1.1 The waters of Waipiro Bay lie within the ancestral rohe moana of Te Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta and are imbued with deep cultural and spiritual meaning. For generations, this area has been a vital area for kai moana collection and a sacred domain, sustaining our communities and anchoring our identity.

1.2 I am a direct descendant of Te Wharerahi, and because of him, my whānau retain inherited rights as beneficiaries of the adjoining Orokawa 3C1 and 3C2B land blocks. Ngāti Kuta and Te Patukeha have an active application for Customary Marine Title over the project area and an unresolved claim before the Waitangi Tribunal. These legal processes are grounded in tikanga and represent the ongoing exercise of mana moana. Any marine or coastal development must reflect the authority and responsibilities we hold under tikanga and Te Tiriti.

1.3 The marina proposal directly threatens our cultural heritage and undermines hapū rights that are both protected under law and recognised in principle by the Crown. No ethical or legal mandate exists to proceed with this project in the absence of full hapū consent and genuine partnership.

2. Environmental and Conservation Concerns

2.1 The proposed development would irreversibly damage an ecologically fragile environment.

The project requires dredging, excavation, and seabed reclamation—processes that would destroy benthic habitats and disrupt the hydrology of the bay.

2.2 Waipiro Bay lies within a designated Marine Mammal Sanctuary, home to dolphins, whales, and other taonga species. Construction-related disturbance and increased boat traffic pose a direct threat to these protected populations. Wetlands, mangroves, and nesting areas for native birds and reptiles would also be put at risk.

2.3 Crucially, Waipiro Bay is affected by the invasive seaweed *Caulerpa*, a significant and ongoing biosecurity threat. Any disturbance of the seabed—particularly dredging—exacerbates its spread into currently unaffected areas. This risk alone should disqualify the project from consideration under a streamlined process. The fast-track regime offers neither the oversight nor the precautionary measures necessary to contain such a threat.

2.4 The developer's own documents acknowledge the unavoidable introduction of pollutants such as sewage, stormwater runoff, fuel residues, and boat waste. These would permanently degrade water quality and harm marine life.

2.5 A marina of this scale would have long-term, cumulative, and likely irreversible effects on an environment that should be protected—not commodified. Proceeding without a full environmental assessment under the RMA would be reckless and inconsistent with the Crown's environmental and conservation responsibilities.

3. Te Tiriti Obligations and Consultation Failures

3.1 The fast-track process, as applied here, ignores the Crown's Te Tiriti o Waitangi obligations.

It is well documented that engagement with Ngāti Kuta and Te Patukeha has been minimal, informal, and non-substantive. This violates core Treaty principles of partnership, active protection, and participation.

3.2 The developer admits formal consultation has not occurred. The Crown likewise acknowledges that Treaty partners have had no meaningful opportunity to engage due to the secrecy of the fast-track process. This is procedurally unacceptable.

3.3 In any process grounded in honourable Treaty practice, hapū would be partners from the outset—leading cultural assessments, shaping consent conditions, and retaining the ability to decline proposals. That has not happened.

3.4 Proceeding under the current regime not only fails to meet Treaty standards but actively undermines them, entrenching a system that excludes Māori from decisions about their own whenua and moana.

4. Incompatibility with Fast-Track Criteria – Clause 18 and Customary Rights

4.1 This project should never have been deemed eligible for fast-tracking. It is located entirely within the common marine and coastal area—an area that cannot be owned and is explicitly protected for the recognition of customary rights under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act.

4.2 Ngāti Kuta and Te Patukeha have an active Customary Marine Title claim over this area, currently before the High Court. Clause 18 of the Fast-track Bill prohibits projects that interfere with such claims. Inclusion of the Waipiro Bay Marina directly contravenes that clause.

4.3 Allowing this project to proceed while our customary title is under legal consideration sets a dangerous precedent. It places speculative private development ahead of legally recognised Māori rights. That outcome is not only unjust—it is unlawful.

5. Relief Sought

5.1 I oppose the Waipiro Bay Marina project in its entirety. The fast-track process must not be used to bypass proper environmental scrutiny, or to override the rights of tangata whenua with deep, enduring, and legally protected interests in the area.

5.2 Accordingly, I seek the following relief:

- That the Waipiro Bay Marina project be removed from Schedule 2B of the Fast-track Approvals Bill.
- That no fast-track approvals be granted for this or any similar development in the rohe moana of Te Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta.
- That any future resource consent application for this development be required to proceed under the full RMA process, with mandatory engagement and co-design with mana whenua, full environmental impact assessment, and transparent public scrutiny.

5.3 The cultural, ecological, and legal stakes in this matter are too high to ignore. The fast-track process as applied here is fundamentally incompatible with the Crown's Te Tiriti obligations and with the values this nation claims to uphold. We ask that justice, partnership, and due process be prioritised over expedience.

7th May 2025

Tēnā koe,

Ko Calem Stewart-Leaton tōku ingoa. I te taha o tōku pāpā, nō Te Rāwhiti ahau. Ko Rewha tōku whānau, ko Ngāti Kuta te hapū. I te taha o tōku māmā, nō Wainui, nō Mātauri. Ko Stewart tōku whānau, ko Ngāti Ruamahue, ko Ngāti Kura ngā hapū. He uri ahau nō Ngā Puhi nui tonu.

I am writing to strongly oppose the Waipiro Bay Marina Proposal in the Bay of Islands, which directly threatens the moana of our tūpuna, our people, and our mokopuna to come at Te Rāwhiti / Ipiripi moana.

This fast-track proposal risks destroying taonga species and undermining our customary food gathering practices, causing irreversible cultural and ecological harm. It is a direct breach of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, and the lack of meaningful consultation with affected hapū Māori is a takahī of the mana of mana whenua and our tūpuna who laid the foundations of He Hakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

From both cultural and environmental perspectives, this proposal exemplifies the prioritisation of profit over people and whenua. Waipiro Bay and the moana is not just a location; it is a living connection to our identity, heritage, and sustenance, and it must be protected for future generations.

I urge that this fast-track application be scrapped and that a standard consent process that allows full public input be adhered to. Over 4,000 people have already signed the "Protect Waipiro Bay: Say NO to the Fast-Track 240-Berth Marina" petition. It is essential that their voices and the voices of our hapū are heard and respected.

Ngā mihi nui,
Calem Stewart-Leaton



Stopwaipiromarina <stopwaipiromarina@gmail.com>

Opposition to Fast-Track Waipiro Bay Marina – In Support of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha Hapū

cayle <cayle0425@gmail.com>

10 May 2025 at 20:22

To: t.potaka@ministers.govt.nz, s.jones@ministers.govt.nz, c.bishop@ministers.govt.nz, "stopwaipiromarina@gmail.com" <stopwaipiromarina@gmail.com>

Tēnā koutou ngā Minita,

I am writing as a concerned citizen and ally to express my strong opposition to the proposal to fast-track the 250-berth marina at Waipiro Bay, Bay of Islands.

This project is being advanced without genuine engagement or the free, prior, and informed consent of the mana whenua — Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū — who have continuously protected and upheld the wellbeing of this sacred moana.

Waipiro Bay is a taonga — a treasure of cultural, ecological, and spiritual significance. Fast-tracking a development of this scale, without robust environmental impact assessments and without respecting the voice of the tangata whenua, is a direct breach of the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. It also undermines the integrity of the Resource Management Act, which was designed to safeguard such areas through democratic and evidence-based processes.

I urge you to:

Reject the fast-track application for the Waipiro Bay marina;

Uphold the mana, tino rangatiratanga, and decision-making authority of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha;

Ensure that all future proposals undergo full cultural and environmental assessments, led by hapū and independent experts;

Support sustainable, hapū-led solutions that respect the mauri of the land and sea.

This is a defining moment to show leadership and uphold commitments to Māori partnership and environmental guardianship.

I stand in full support of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha, and I ask that you do the same.

Ngā mihi nui,

C Rivas-Reti
Ngātiwai

Kia ū ki te tika, kia kaha ki te manaaki i te taiao me te mana whenua.
Stand firm in doing what is right — protect the environment and uphold mana whenua

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

07/05/2025

Christopher Bartlett

Via email: christopher.c.bartlett@gmail.com

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I am a member of a family with a property in Waipiro Bay, located within close proximity to the proposed Waipiro Marina.

My family have a longstanding membership with the Eastern Bay of Island Preservation Society Inc.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Waipiro Bay is a pristine environment, with exceptional natural beauty. A Marina in this environment would be a visual scar, and completely out of character with both Waipiro Bay and the general area. Homes and buildings in the eastern Bay of islands are sparsely distributed, and typically quite modest. They do not dominate their surrounds. The proposed Marina is not in any way sympathetic to this area from an aesthetic standpoint.

Construction of the proposed Marina would involve considerable modification to the natural environment. The proposed level of modification is significant in the sense that once it is done, it would never be able to be undone.

Risks around fuel storage and transfer mean that there is an ongoing threat to the marine environment in the vicinity of the proposed marina. Although these risks can be managed to an extent, they can never be fully mitigated. The consequences of major leakage of fuel would be catastrophic.

There is already some Helicopter traffic in and out of Waipiro Bay. A Marina would no doubt lead to an increase in demand for this type of service. Any additional Helicopter traffic in the area would cause considerable disturbance to nearby property owners.

Road access to Waipiro Bay is not adequate for servicing the additional traffic that the proposed marina would generate. The road is a lightly sealed and narrow. Road surface deterioration is already an issue even with the relatively light traffic volumes currently experienced. Even a small increase in traffic would accelerate the decay of what is already a poorly maintained road. The safety implications of this cannot be overlooked.

Blackwater (untreated sewage) is also a concern. Although it is accepted that marinas are a 'no discharge' zone, it is equally well known that many boaties do not adhere to this. It is almost impossible to police. This is an unacceptable threat to both the local environment and to those who use the bay recreationally for swimming and other water-based activities.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Christopher Bartlett

419B Manawaora Road

Waipiro Bay

Parekura Bay 0184

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

4th May 2025

Ngati Kuta ki Te Rawhiti Hapu & Rewha Reweti Whanau Claims

Wai 2768 and CIV 2017-485-352

Email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I/We represent our whanau and hapu here, living at Rawhiti in the Eastern Bay of Islands, and I am authorised to make this submission.

I/We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as they incorporate our views on our values, customs, and traditions.

We are united in the position of opposition that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7, relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. There is no evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. It does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because it is not a significant regional or national benefit development. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of substantial regional benefit.
3. It does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support primary industries, including aquaculture.
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991. This application should be considered through the normal Resource Consenting process. This will give our wider community time to evaluate and/or support its merits.
5. Our waterways in our rohe moana are infested with Caulerpa Brachypus and Parafolia, and no solution is in sight. In the meantime, the spread of this invasive pest and any boat traffic or seabed disturbance from near or within the Waipiro marina site could be financially, environmentally, and customarily catastrophic.
6. In addition, the MACA Amendment Bill remains outstanding, and this outcome affects Ngati Kuta and Patukeha Customary Marine Title positions. Ngati Kuta, in particular, has made substantive submissions under the RMA Act to secure its traditional coastal boundaries,

fishing areas, rocks, reefs, fishing grounds and islands. The coastal areas within the Bay Of Islands, including Waipiro Bay, are a part of that test.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** so that the proposal can proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in Stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

A handwritten signature in blue ink, appearing to read 'R. Willoughby', with a long horizontal flourish extending to the right.

Robert Willoughby

Ngati Kuta Hapu-Wai Claim 1307, 2768

Rewha-Reweti CMT Claim-CIV-2017-485-000352

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

Fri 2nd may

Ngatiwai

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent The Heta family of Kaimarama Bay Rawhiti and am authorised to provide this submission.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates [my] views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Darren Hira]

To: Ministry for the Environment, MPI, DOC, NRC, FNDC, MBIE, The NZ Government.

Nga minita: S. Jones, T. Potaka and C.Bishop

Nga mihi kia koutou, e whakamoemiti kia koutou, nga mihi

It is with a strong sense of urgency that I ask you all to reject Fast Track Application #229 that seeks to build a new marina at Waipiro Bay in the Bay of Islands.

I object to the proposal for three reasons:

1/ Firstly, I support Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha in their campaign as mana whenua to have their legitimate concerns (of which there are many) acknowledged and respected in this matter. Waipiro Bay is not my turangawaewae, so I will not be addressing the topic of customary rights in this letter. I will leave that korero in the capable hands of those who whakapapa to the area.

2/ My second objection concerns the project's impact on the marine environment. There is almost no doubt that the construction and future operation of a marina in this location, or any other location in the Bay of Islands, will seriously undermine our efforts to control the current and catastrophic infestation of the pest seaweed caulerpa.

3/ I am a small business owner operating a commercial vessel within the Bay of Islands marine tourism industry, and for this reason, the caulerpa problem also underpins my third objection; that the construction of the new marina will contribute to the spread a pest that is already having a negative impact on our business.

My husband and I own a luxury sailing yacht charter company that we have been operating in the Bay of Islands for about 10 years. Most of our guests are overseas visitors who travel to the Bay of Islands for the sole purpose of chartering our vessel, which is unique within the market. A couple of seasons ago, when the discovery of caulerpa caused anchoring restrictions among the bays, some of our most popular destinations were no longer available to our clients. Our concern is that this dwindling supply of available anchorages means that we could already be experiencing the beginning of the end of marine tourism in the Bay of Islands.

The applicant states that independent research suggests the marina will generate between \$180 and \$220 million dollars and 140 jobs over 30 years. At this stage in the process, and without public access to the research cited, we can only take these assertions at face value. What we do know is that if we can't solve the caulerpa problem, then the entire region's marine tourism and fishing industries are at risk of collapsing. Recreational fishing, diving, and excursions like dolphin cruises and whale watching will become futile, and finding an anchorage that isn't subject to a rahui will likely become almost impossible.

Caulerpa is spread by the movement of boats and that is why we have rahui in infested areas now. Marinas are the epicentres of this traffic and it is absolutely certain that this marina, both in its construction phase and in its future operation, will significantly hamper our efforts to control the pest in the surrounding bays and beyond. The claim that a new marina will bring money to the region (the value of which is yet to be verified) must be weighed against the risk that it will add to the costs of this very expensive problem. In this context, I suggest that the new marina could not possibly generate enough income to cover the burden it will impose on the public purse.

A recent news article (*Spin Off*, May 2nd 2024) reports that in February of this year, “biosecurity minister Andrew Hoggard announced funding of \$6.2m to assist with development of the technology to help control the spread of caulerpa. However, that only brings total government funding to approximately \$15m over four years, compared to the \$100m Northland Regional Council says is needed to tackle the issue”. If this pest spreads throughout the country it will threaten the fishing industry, (worth about \$5.2 billion annually), and the marine tourism industry (about \$2.1 billion annually). These are two of the northern region's most important industries.

In 2018, another introduced marine pest, called the Mediterranean fanworm, was discovered in the Bay of Islands. All boat owners were very quickly subjected to a new set of regulations aimed at halting its spread. These were inspection and hull cleaning requirements that made compliance not only expensive, but in some respects almost impossible, so it was a challenging time for commercial operators like us. Nevertheless, the boating community did its best to adjust to the new regime. What I learned from this experience is that marina operators can not be relied upon to control this type of pest within their own facilities.

The Bay of Islands Marina at Opua was at the front line of initial efforts to control the spread of fanworm. On the 12th of April, 2019, the marina issued a media release outlining its plans to remove fanworm from its piers. Teams of divers were tasked with manually removing the animals over a period of months, supported by funding from the Northland Regional Council (\$60,000) and Biosecurity New Zealand (\$40,000). The marina also moved quickly to impose strict rules on individual boat owners wanting to book a berth. Boat owners were required to pay divers to inspect and clean their hulls before arriving at the marina, only to become reinfected during their stay. Ultimately, the challenge proved too great and attempts to enforce the rules were abandoned. The end result is that the marina is now a permanent host for this pest.

In regard to application FTA#229, it is my understanding that as the approval process progresses, decision makers will consider the proposal's potential impact on the environment in more detail. No doubt this will trigger discussions with the applicants about their environmental responsibilities generally, and perhaps caulerpa specifically. I am concerned that the applicants might agree to comply with any biosecurity related clauses or conditions attached to the approval, and then later renege on these agreements citing overwhelming costs. When it comes to biosecurity, marina operators might have good intentions, but apparently, as in the case of fanworm, regulators have no option but to accept the excuse that when there's nothing in the budget, nothing can be done. In this current case, the applicants will already know that biosecurity regulators have been powerless to force marinas to comply in the past, and so will likely expect a similar outcome in relation to their own facility in the future.

In a media statement, the applicant asserts that the marina will help to fill a gap in demand for this type of facility. This is simply not true. There are already at least ten marinas along the coast between Auckland and Whangaroa, and as owners of a large vessel ourselves, we are well served by these existing marinas. To keep our licence as a commercial operator, our vessel is subject to regular haul outs and inspections and we never have any difficulty finding a marina to do this work. We also enjoy being able to shop around for goods and services in an already robust and competitive market.

The application refers to the Northland Regional Council Moorings and Marinas Strategy (2014) which indicates "Waipiro Bay as a potential mooring/marina area in the long term, subject to demand". The applicant offers no evidence of a shortfall in the availability of marina services in the Bay of Islands. The applicant might be referring to the very localised demand generated by the wealthy owners of its own adjacent property development; but providing those individuals with a private berth will do very little, if anything, to benefit the region as a whole.

Instead of a new marina, what the marine tourism industry actually needs is plenty of safe, peaceful anchorages - like Waipiro Bay - that can be freely enjoyed by all visitors, but the availability of these types of anchorages is already dwindling as the caulerpa weed forces the closure of infested bays and coves. Waipiro Bay is one of our region's most beautiful boating destinations, and if we can control the caulerpa, then the entire bay should remain available as a wholly public anchorage.

On the subject of peaceful enjoyment, I note that the applicant also hopes to build a helicopter pad in the bay. Ostensibly, the applicant refers to it as a landing place for emergency services, but there can be no doubt that its primary purpose will be to transport wealthy landowners to and from the applicant's nearby housing development. The applicant's broader plans for Waipiro Bay, if successful, will effectively relegate both the existing resident community (including mana whenua), and the boating public to the margins of the bay forever. The disruption will be enormous, the impact will be permanent and in regard to the proposal's anticipated benefits, it is very likely to cost more than it returns.

The Fast Track process is designed to "facilitate the delivery of infrastructure and development projects with significant regional or national benefits", especially where the proposal is expected to fill an existing gap in the demand for its services. I hope that after careful consideration, you will agree that Application FTA#229 has: a) not provided evidence that the new marina will meet a shortfall in demand, or that such a shortfall even exists; and b) that it will not deliver a significant regional benefit, because its core purpose is to service, and increase the value of, private properties within an isolated and exclusive enclave.

Nga mihi kia koutou,
Deirdre Green
s 9(2)(a)

Russell, Bay of Islands.

Thursday 8th May 2025

Tena koe tena koutou katoa

As a kaitiaki and tangata of this whenua Pewhairangi ki Tai Tokerau; I vehemently oppose any plans to build a marina at Waipiro Bay and any other bay that greedy, kuare individuals set their ignorant target on for their white privileged people to pollute, decimate and have no regard or connection to the surrounding moana and whenua.

Clean up the caulerpa - the single cell stem seaweed that creeps along our moana - which is what the marina is and would do! Actually scratch that - it is the greedy wealthy that should be named the Caulerpa of the Corporate 🤖

This heinous practice is historically reminiscent of society in 1840 !!!

kia tau te rangimarie

s 9(2)(a)

Submission for the Proposed Marina at Waipiro Bay.

My name is Deliah Quedec, and I am a resident of Te Rāwhiti, where my whānau have lived for generations. I belong to Ngā Hapū, Patukeha, Ngāti Kuta, Ngāti Rēhia, Ngāti Kawa, and Ngāti Rahiri. I am writing to express my deep concerns and opposition to the proposed marina development at Waipiro Bay.

Environmental and Ecological Concerns:

1. Habitat destruction:

This marina development will harm and destroy the natural habitats of marine species, including fish, birds and other wildlife.

2. Seabed destruction:

The marina would require the removal of hundreds of tonnes of seabed, which would cause significant environmental damage:

- sediment disturbance, reducing water quality.
- loss of biodiversity, as species rely on specific habitats.
- change to water flow patterns, causing coastal erosion.
- possible release of pollutants, heavy metals and nutrients
- impacts on the foodchain.

3. Caulerpa:

It seems incredulous that even though this toxic invasive weed is ever present and spreading at will within neighbouring bays and islands, that this Marina is **STILL** being pushed.

The increased risk of it's spread throughout Northland and afar is inevitable.

4. Water Quality:

With increased human activity and boat traffic, pollution, sedimentation and decreased water quality is inevitable.

5. Traffic and Infrastructure:

Increased vehicle traffic on the Whakapara/Russell Road due to the Marina could pose safety risks to walkers ie (Te Araroa)

and farm animals and locals.

The increased traffic would also lead to increased wear and tear on already sub-par local roads incurring costly and more frequent repairs. Which in turn would most likely be tacked on to the local residents rates charges.

Cultural Concerns:

As a member of Ngā Hapū Patukeha, Ngā Kuta, Ngāti Rēhia, Ngāti Kawa, and Ngāti Rahiri, I am deeply connected to the whenua and the moana. The proposed marina development would not only harm the environment but also desecrate the cultural and spiritual significance of Waipiro Bay. And also further restrict access to cultural sites (gated)

Impact on the local Communities:

With the influx of hundreds of extra visitors and boats into our small communities, our local infrastructure, services and resources could become seriously overwhelmed. Severe overcrowding of our already depleted fishing grounds during peak times, unsustainable, especially with so many restricted fishing zones already established, including the CAN area(caulerpa)

Loss of community character:

The Marina has the potential to alter our communities character forever through gentrification, imposing on residents quiet enjoyment, displacing and pricing out long-time residents and small businesses.

Conclusion:

I respectfully request that the decision-makers carefully consider the concerns outlined in my submission and prioritize the protection of Waipiro Bay and surrounds, environmental, cultural, and social values. I urge you to consider the long- lasting impacts the Marina will have on the ecosystem and communities that connect to the area.

Nāku
Deliah Quedec

s 9(2)(a)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister Fast-
Track Approval c/-
ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

8th May 2025

Donna Maria Arnold
Patukeha
Rawhiti 2A9A Owner/Shareholder

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent myself, my 5 daughters my mokopuna and great mokopuna and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Patukeha and Ngati Kuta hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A in Whiorau Bay which will be directly impacted by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Donna Maria Arnold
(Owner/Shareholder)

2/5/2025

Kia ora,

I am fully behind your opposition to the horrific proposed Waipiro Bay Marina. It will be devastating to the environment and the beauty of the Bay if this monstrosity goes ahead. PLEASE PLEASE PLEASE make sure it doesn't happen!! And please please please make sure this govt is a one-term (or less) govt!

Nga mihi nui,
Dr Sam Hill



Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Eastern Bay of Islands Preservation Society Submission
Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

The Eastern Bay of Islands Preservation Society opposes Fast-Track approval for the proposed Waipiro Bay marina as provided for in our previous statement dated 3 February 2025 and attached below.

The Preservation Society has a 50+ year history of advocating on behalf of our community regarding the importance of preserving this unique and popular area of Northland. The Preservation Society was established in recognition that there would be significant commercial development pressure in the eastern Bay of Islands due to its special character. If built, this marina would not only permanently alter and degrade Waipiro Bay. It would also have a significantly harmful effect on the broader area of the eastern Bay of Islands.

To date, we are unaware of any prior substantive discussion and dialogue in Northland about this type of large-scale commercial development in the eastern Bay of Islands from a long-term regional planning perspective. There are significant questions that require appropriate broad-based consideration about how and where development in Northland should occur, and to what extent areas such as this should be preserved free of large-scale commercial development. These questions are best addressed through existing long-term regional and district planning processes incorporating ample public consultation and not through Fast-Track.

The Preservation Society supports the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views. The Preservation Society is united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:



1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

The Preservation Society seeks that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Sandra Scowen
Co-Secretary
Eastern Bay of Islands Preservation Society



Eastern Bay of Islands Preservation Society Opposes Fast-Tracking of 250 Berth Marina and Wharf Development Projects in Waipiro and Omakiwi Bays

3 February 2025 (revised)

The Society **opposes** fast-tracking of the 250 berth Waipiro Bay Marinaⁱ and Omakiwi Wharfⁱⁱ development proposals.

These proposed projects utilise fast track to put private commercial benefits ahead of public, regional economic and environmental interests by circumventing important consultations with the community, environmental groups, local councils and other stakeholders, including:

- The proposed developments will have a significant environmental impact on a unique part of New Zealand's outstanding coastline, threatening an already fragile and unique marine environment.
- The proposals provide free permanent occupation of valuable public seabed and foreshore to private interests without appropriate public consultation.
- Greater economic and social benefit could be achieved through further development within the existing commercialised areas of the Bay of Islands while preserving the unique and fragile environment of the Eastern Bay of Islands.
- There is strong, unified opposition to fast-tracking these projects from a broad coalition of community, environmental, and iwi stakeholders, highlighting the importance of removing these projects from fast track.

ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT

The eastern Bay of Islands has to be one of the finer stretches of water and coastline on earth. Bush-covered headlands point toward idyllic islands, sheltered seas eventually lead to the open ocean. Beautiful coves alternate with rocky points.

The absence of significant commercial development is fundamental to the character and enduring natural value of the eastern Bay of Islands. The significant scale of intensification and commercialisation of these proposed development projects would permanently degrade and threaten the area's natural value.

Each of the bays in the Eastern Bay of Islands is unique and together they form an interlinked ecosystem. **Waipiro Bay** contains important intertidal and subtidal and mud flats that serve as a breeding ground for the eagle rays that orca whales use as a



valuable food source and support shellfish that they feed on and snapper and other marine life. Surrounding mangroves support bird and sea life. Waipiro Bay has also historically served as an essential storm anchorage for boats visiting and enjoying the eastern Bay of Islands, due to its excellent mud anchor holding and essential shelter from certain wind directions. Alternative local anchorages are limited due to poorer holding, overcrowding, and wind exposure. Marina development would significantly alter if not irreversibly destroy the above characteristics.

Omakiwi Bay's clear waters are frequented by kingfish and Kahawai which feed on baitfish hiding in its rocky shallows. The bay has a long history as a popular sheltered and quiet anchorage for visiting boats and is designated by Northland Regional Council as a regionally significant anchorage (though see "Caulerpa" below) and has sacred meaning with local hapu due to the overlooking urupa. Wharf development would significantly alter the character of Omakiwi Bay.

In addition, increased boat traffic in and thru the eastern Bay of Islands that would result from each of these proposed development projects would adversely affect the eastern Bay of Islands in a multitude of ways, including:

- Impact of noise pollution from increased boat traffic in and out of affected bays on dolphins and local birdlife, as well as peaceful public enjoyment of the area.
- Waipiro and Omakiwi Bays and the surrounding maritime area are part of the Te Pēwhairangi (Bay of Islands) Marine Mammal Sanctuary and are subject to restrictions on boat movement and speed to protect dolphins and other marine mammals. The Sanctuary was formed in response to the dwindling dolphin population in the Bay.
- Increased recreational fishing resulting from direct boat access. For example, nearby historic scallop beds have been significantly over harvested and are now closed, and traditionally abundant mussels are now almost impossible to find. No beds of green-lipped mussels remain in the Eastern Bay of Islands.
- Increased load on further limited anchorage space, both with regards to safety during storms, as well as effects of constant anchoring on seagrass and other sensitive marine habitat. Boats sailing into the Bay of Islands from around Cape Brett could find it increasingly difficult to find safe anchorage, particularly during storms.

We further note that the eastern Bay of Islands marine environment has recently been affected by the highly invasive and environmentally and economically damaging alien



Caulerpa marine weed. Caulerpa growth is extensive in Omakiwi Bay. This bay and the surrounding waters including Waipiro Bay are subject to MPI biosecurity controls including anchoring and fishing prohibitions to help reduce further spread. MPI's written advisories provided for the Marina and Wharf projects fail to mention Caulerpa, even though MPI is responsible for management of this significant biosecurity threat. As a result, Ministers and the advisory panel responsible for recommending and assessing fast track projects could be unaware of this important consideration. We cannot see how marine development projects in either bay can proceed without risking the massive spread of Caulerpa during construction and the subsequent ongoing use, as well as interfering with eradication efforts.

THE REGIONAL ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL BENEFIT IMPACT IS UNCLEAR

Ample marina and marine access facilities are already in place in better suited areas of the Bay of Islands and have potential for further development. The western flank of the Bay of Islands, including Opuia, Paihia, Russell and Kerikeri, has the necessary support services, lodging and other related infrastructure that is lacking at Waipiro Bay. Employment opportunities in these areas offer stronger benefits than in the eastern Bay of Islands. Existing mooring fields throughout the Bay of Islands, including in Waipiro Bay, provide additional safe boat storage in a less intrusive and more appropriate manner, particularly in the eastern Bay of Islands.

We are also concerned that the area's **roads** are inadequate to support the increased construction and user traffic that would be associated with each of the proposed development projects. Area roads are narrow, have many sharp curves, and are poorly suited for safely accommodating larger construction vehicles and trailer traffic. The road to Omakiwi Bay is unsealed for a significant portion. Increasing road traffic would further compound these safety concerns and it appears that adequacy of the area's roads would not be taken into consideration in the fast-track review and approval process.

PRIVATE BENEFIT AND 'FREE' TRANSFER

The Waipiro Bay Marina and the Omakiwi Wharf development projects both represent a free permanent occupation of valuable public property (seabed, intertidal and foreshore) to private interests for the benefit of a select few. Maintaining the bays of the eastern Bay of Islands in their natural state represents their highest and best use to the public. Neither project would provide significant national or regional benefit as required



by the Fast-track Approvals Act, and the limited economic and public user benefits of these proposed development projects do not justify bypassing via fast-track status consideration of important environmental, safety and community considerations.

THERE IS STRONG LOCAL AND COMMUNITY OPPOSITION TO FAST-TRACKING

We are concerned by the lack of public consultation and bypassing of due process that would occur if these projects are granted approval to follow the fast track consent process. All stakeholders deserve to be heard and considered, including local residents, Northlanders, community groups and the local councils. For example, Northland Inc has done significant work with respect to regional long-term planning as set forth in their Taitokerau Northland Destination Management Planⁱⁱⁱ. This plan is based on collaboration with iwi, hapū and other stakeholders, for the benefit of Northland communities, businesses, the environment, and future generations, and gives prominent recognition to the importance and conservation of environmental factors such as those that exist in the eastern Bay of Islands.

The Society is strongly opposed to fast-tracking of each of these proposed development projects, and we believe a significant majority of the local community is similarly opposed. Accordingly, we recommend that both the Waipiro Bay Marina and Omakiwi Wharf development projects **be declined for fast-track status**.

The Preservation Society has a 50-year history of community and environmental leadership in the eastern Bay of Islands. It represents a broad group of permanent residents and families who visit the area regularly. Additional Information can be found at <https://eboipreservationsociety.org.nz>

For more information, please contact Sandra Scowen, Secretary @ 09 403 8537

i Proposed Waipiro Bay marina application documents located at <https://environment.govt.nz/acts-and-regulations/acts/fast-track-approvals/fast-track-projects/waipiro-marina/>

ii Proposed Omakiwi Wharf application documents located at <https://environment.govt.nz/acts-and-regulations/acts/fast-track-approvals/fast-track-projects/omakiwi-jetty/>

iii See <https://www.northlandnz.com/northland-inc/what-we-do/destination-management/destination-management-plan/>



Popular Omakiwi Bay anchorage prior to Caulurpa anchoring restrictions (2020). While anchoring is now banned due to Caulerpa, completion of the proposed wharf structure would significantly reduce and degrade recreational anchoring in this peaceful bay when Caulerpa restrictions are lifted.



Waipiro Bay, Bay of Islands

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

2 May 2025

Ngāti Kuta

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent the Harte Whānau of Ngāti Kuta hapū and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapū, as it incorporates our views.

We are **opposed** to the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project.

Our hapū is based nearby in the tranquil and beautiful community of Te Rawhiti, a short 15 minute drive from Waipiro Bay. Part of the beauty and tranquility of the region that draws tourists from around the world is the lack of commercial properties and industry. They visit Cape Brett, Urupukapuka Island, Te Rawhiti campground and more in their droves every year to enjoy our quiet and low key vibes.

A marina such as the one proposed with its huge number of berths, massive carpark and associated staff requirements that would surely be needed goes against that tranquil and quiet appeal of the region, and would be a detriment to the tourism appeal of our beautiful whenua.

In addition to these views, the Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Elizabeth Emere Harte

on behalf of the Harte Whānau

Ngāti Kuta hapū

Ngāpuhi

E: s 9(2)(a)

P: s 9(2)(a)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

02 May 2025

Patukeha Hapu

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I/We represent [insert roopu/whanau/hapu here] and am authorised to provide this submission.

I/We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates [my/our] views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

- ~~**The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.**~~
- ~~**Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.**~~
- ~~**Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and**~~
- ~~**It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.**~~

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,
Jane Matangi
Patukeha Hapu

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

01/05/2025

Jasmine Castle

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent my small whānau and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.
5. We are tribal members of the Hauraki. We are a coastal iwi and value what's left of our whenua and equally our moana that is very sick, no seafood or marine stock, caulerpa, and any possibility of living with our natural environment is near impossible. We support the iwi by submission and support to save their whenua, moana, iwi, hapū.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Jasmine Castle on behalf of Cyril Willim Nigel Castle Whānau Trust.

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Referral for Waipiro Marina

I am opposed to Fast-Track referral based on the following

1. The Eastern Bay of Islands has been kept free of large-scale commercial development to preserve its scenic beauty and natural value. Maintaining the bays of the eastern Bay of Islands in their natural state represents their highest and best long-term economic and ecological value to the public. Marina development in Waipiro Bay would be a permanent significant alteration of this balance primarily for the substantial benefit of the applicant and developers. Commercial development and marine infrastructure in the Bay of Islands should remain concentrated along the Western flank where the majority of the population lives and existing services are located. Opuia, Pahia Russell, and Kerikeri are the logical access points to the Bay of Islands, not Waipiro Bay.
2. Providing easy access to the eastern Bay of Islands thru 200-plus marina berths and significant additional trailer boat launching facilities would further overwhelm the Eastern Bay of Islands with more users than can be safely or environmentally sustained. During the summer busy season, anchorages in the Eastern Bay of Islands already often become saturated with boats. This becomes a safety issue when storms are passing through. Completion of the proposed marina and trailer boat launching facilities would significantly exacerbate this problem, both thru the increased numbers of boats recreationally using area anchorages, and thru further restriction of the number of visiting boats that would be able to anchor in Waipiro Bay. Waipiro Bay has long been considered an important safe storm anchorage in the boating community. Perceived demand is not justification by itself for development.
3. Waipiro Bay and surrounds is rural in nature and has no proximate infrastructure and support services and insufficient local population to justify a Marina. There are no haul out and maintenance facilities provided for in the proposal, and no nearby marine services. Marine service providers would need to make a two-hour round trip from Opuia to provide services. Berth holders would primarily be non-

local. Area roads are inadequate for the increased traffic, including trailer traffic, a concern that has not been substantively addressed by the applicant.

4. A Marina in Waipiro Bay would not provide significant national or regional benefits as required by Fast-Track. The primary economic benefit would be to the applicant/developers who stand to make a **\$50 million profit** from the sale of marina berths at estimated average sales prices of **\$80,000 to \$1.2 million per berth** (based on sales and development cost estimates provided in the economic assessment prepared on behalf of the developers). This profit is made possible through the rent-free transfer of permanent seabed occupation rights without due process, including appropriate public consultation.
5. Approval would create the appearance of political “quid-pro-quo” (underlying applicant is a major National Party and Act Party political donor) for a project that does not otherwise appear to merit or qualify for Fast-Track approval.
6. The marina would not generate rates or significant other revenues to Council to offset higher costs of maintaining roads and services, placing further pressure on our Council’s limited resources.
7. Waipiro Bay is in an area subject to a Controlled Area Notice due to the presence of the highly invasive Caulerpa seaweed. This Caulerpa invasion is spreading rapidly in the area. Construction of the proposed marina could interfere with eradication efforts, and the associated dredging activities could create a high risk of further spread to previously unaffected areas. Also, the marina proposal itself is a significant distraction for those who are trying to focus on addressing the local Caulerpa invasion. Efforts to eliminate Caulerpa are what needs to be fast-tracked.
8. The proposed Waipiro Bay marina includes a large area of reclaimed seabed to be used for car-parking facilities and a boat ramp. A similar fast-track application was recently denied for a proposed [Rangitane boat ramp](#) and carpark which was to be built on a seabed reclamation in the Te Puna Inlet. Using reclaimed seabed for purposes of a car park would represent a significant precedent in New Zealand and is not appropriate for Waipiro Bay based on the factors cited in the Rangitane decision.
9. A marina would have a negligible effect on local jobs. Tutukaka marina’s wage expenditure amounts to only approximately \$225,000 per annum. This is a good indicator of the minimal potential value of local job creation that the Waipiro Bay marina would provide. Also, jobs would largely be seasonal in nature.

10. Fast-track disrespects our local Northland community. Under Fast-Track, an important decision that will permanently affect the local community will be made at a national level in a manner that bypasses substantive local participation in the decision-making process and ignores existing community-based long-term regional planning efforts already in place. This type of long-term resource decision is best made under a Northland and community centric approach.

11. There is broad-based community opposition to building a marina in Waipiro Bay including opposition by local Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu and the Eastern Bay of Islands Preservation Society.

I also strongly support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Please **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow appropriate due-process consideration of this proposal.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, I request to be able to participate in that stage 2.

Mauri ora,

Jay Howell

Parekura Bay, Bay of Islands

s 9(2)(a)

Submission Opposing the Waipiro Marina Fast-Track Project

To: Ministry for the Environment / Fast-Track Consenting Decision-Makers

Subject: Opposition to Application FTA229 – Waipiro Marina (Bay of Islands, Northland)

Introduction

I am writing as an individual concerned about the proposed Waipiro Marina fast-track project (Application FTA229) in Waipiro Bay, Bay of Islands. I respectfully oppose this project on ecological, cultural, and social grounds. While development of infrastructure can bring economic opportunities, in this case the potential environmental degradation, cultural disconnection, and lack of genuine community consultation outweigh any claimed benefits. This submission outlines the key concerns and urges decision-makers to decline approval for the Waipiro Marina project.

Ecological and Environmental Concerns

Rich Marine and Estuarine Habitat: Waipiro Bay is an ecologically sensitive area, supporting diverse marine and bird life. Official Department of Conservation (DOC) feedback identifies the bay as an “important breeding habitat for birds, estuarine and marine species”. The site includes wetlands and mangroves within the coastal marine area, which serve as crucial nursery and feeding grounds for fish and shellfish. Even the project’s application acknowledges the presence of shellfish beds, fishing grounds, and sensitive habitats in the vicinity. These habitats would be directly disturbed by the proposed marina construction (e.g. through dredging, reclamation, and mangrove removal).

Threats to Wildlife: The construction and operation of a 200–250 berth marina pose significant risks to local fauna. Increased boat traffic, underwater noise, and water pollution could disturb marine mammals – notably, the site lies within the Te Pēwhairangi (Bay of Islands) Marine Mammal Sanctuary established to protect dolphins. Without careful management, construction activities (pile driving, dredging) and ongoing vessel presence may harm marine mammals and other wildlife. Avian life is also at risk: Waipiro Bay’s indigenous bird habitats (including shorebirds and seabirds that nest or feed in estuaries) could be degraded. The applicant notes the presence of indigenous avian species habitats and claims these will be protected, yet such outcomes are far from guaranteed once heavy machinery and human disturbance commence. Any loss of bird nesting sites or feeding areas would undermine the biodiversity of the area.

Water Quality and Shellfish Safety: The project will inevitably alter water quality through sediment disturbance and increased run-off. Dredging can release sediment and contaminants, smothering benthic organisms. Sediment and pollutant runoff from construction and paved surfaces (parking lots, roads) can degrade the natural water quality of the bay. This threatens shellfish and fish populations which local communities harvest for food. Shellfish beds in the bay could be damaged or destroyed by dredging and reclamation, and remaining shellfish may accumulate contaminants, impacting their viability as kai moana (seafood). The applicant has proposed mitigation like controlled sediment management and wastewater systems, but without an independent, detailed ecological assessment there is no certainty these measures will suffice.

Lack of Comprehensive Ecological Assessment: Alarming, DOC noted that “without a proper ecological assessment, it is difficult to assess the impacts of the proposal... on ecological values.” In other words, the project is being advanced without fully understanding its environmental effects. Proceeding in the absence of a rigorous, transparent Environmental Impact Assessment would be irresponsible. The fast-track process should not mean cutting corners on science – a full ecological survey of Waipiro Bay’s species (including any threatened or taonga species) and habitats is essential before deciding on a marina. To date, no such public assessment or detailed ecological report has been provided, leaving a serious information gap. The potential for long-term environmental degradation – habitat loss, water pollution, biodiversity decline – is high. These adverse effects undermine the sustainability of local fisheries and marine life that current and future generations of locals should be able to enjoy and harvest.

Cultural and Customary Concerns

Impact on Tangata Whenua and Mahinga Kai: The proposed marina site falls within the rohe (area) of local hapū who hold customary rights in these waters. According to the Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) advice, the site “overlays part of the rohe of Ngāpuhi hapū, Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha, who exercise customary fishing rights in this area.” These hapū manage important customary fishing grounds under the Fisheries (Kaimoana Customary Fishing) regulations, and their customary rohe overlaps the project site. The marina could severely affect these rights and the ability of tangata whenua to gather kaimoana (seafood) as they have for generations. If shellfish beds and fish nursery areas are depleted or contaminated, cultural practices and traditional diets connected to the sea will suffer. This amounts to an affront to kaitiakitanga – the guardianship role of these hapū – and undermines their rangatiratanga (authority) over ancestral waters.

Cultural Heritage Sites: The Waipiro Bay area is rich in Māori history and heritage. DOC’s report indicates there are multiple culturally significant sites in the vicinity, including pā sites, middens, pits/terraces, and wāhi tapu (sacred sites). Any ground disturbance in such an area carries the risk of uncovering or damaging archaeological taonga. While the applicant will require approvals under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act if sites are affected, the sheer scale of earthworks (dredging, land excavation) raises the likelihood of inadvertent damage. Moreover, even if physical artifacts are avoided, the project will alter the landscape and seascape that hold spiritual and cultural value for local iwi and hapū. The identity and history of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha are intertwined with this coastal environment; a large commercial marina imposed on the bay could be seen as a desecration of that heritage landscape.

Inadequate Consideration of Treaty Principles: The fast-track process, by its nature, has limited the opportunity to uphold Treaty of Waitangi principles. DOC explicitly stated that due to confidentiality requirements, they “have not been able to engage with [their] Treaty partners or address [their] obligations to give effect to Treaty principles,” recommending that the Crown engage with Treaty partners to understand their perspectives. This implies the project has not yet met the Crown’s duty to actively protect Māori interests and consult in good faith. There is also no completed Treaty settlement in this area (Ngāpuhi’s claims are ongoing), meaning no settled iwi entity has agreed to this project. Fast-tracking a development in an area that is “pre-settlement” – with Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha recognized as tangata whenua but not having had their claims resolved – is extremely sensitive. Approving the marina despite unresolved Treaty claims and without robust Māori engagement would risk breaching Treaty principles of partnership and active protection of Māori taonga.

Lack of Meaningful Consultation

Minimal Engagement with Hapū: To date, consultation with local Māori and community stakeholders has been woefully inadequate. The applicant’s own submission admits that “formal consultations with stakeholders are yet to commence in full” and that so far only preliminary, informal discussions with the principal hapū (Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha) have taken place. These initial talks were “exploratory in nature and are not yet recognized as official consultations by any involved party.” In other words, there has been no genuine or substantive consultation with the hapū – only minimal early outreach. Importantly, even government advisors have flagged this gap: MPI’s advice confirms that “consultation on this development is yet to commence” and notes that while the hapū are identified in the application, formal engagement has not occurred. This contradicts any impression that local Māori are on board; on the contrary, it indicates their voices have not been heard in the planning so far.

Limited Community Involvement: Likewise, the broader local community has had almost no input. The only community engagement cited by the applicant was with the residents of 285 Manawaora Road – essentially the private Omarino landowners adjacent to the site. Gaining the support of a small residents’ association for land access is not the same as consulting the wider Bay of Islands community or the public who use these waters. Public access and use of Waipiro Bay (for boating, fishing, swimming, etc.) stand to be affected, yet those everyday users have not been adequately consulted. The fast-track pathway has bypassed the normal public notification and submission processes that a project of this scale would typically trigger under the Resource Management Act. This lack of transparency and public participation means many locals feel blindsided by the proposal. A development of this magnitude in a beloved bay should not proceed without full, open community

consultation and engagement with all affected parties (iwi/hapū, local residents, environmental groups, and recreational users). The current approach falls short of the inclusive process that good governance and environmental stewardship require.

Consultation Must Be Genuine and Ongoing: Moving forward, it is imperative that tangata whenua and community stakeholders be centrally involved in any decision-making about Waipiro Bay. Thus far, consultation has been treated as a procedural afterthought – a “to be done later” item – rather than a genuine dialogue shaping the project from the outset. This is unacceptable for a project in an area of high cultural and ecological value. The submission timeline under the fast-track process does not negate the need for meaningful consultation; rather, it demands even more effort to ensure voices are heard in a compressed timeframe. In this case, that effort has been lacking. The absence of community consent or even knowledge of the project undermines its legitimacy. A marina development, if unwanted by those who live near and care for these environments, will sow resentment and conflict, rather than the “social license” any development needs to succeed long-term.

Social and Local Livelihood Concerns

Impacts on Local Fisheries and Kai Moana: Many local people depend on the Bay’s natural resources for their livelihoods and sustenance. Small-scale fishers, gatherers of shellfish (pipi, cockles, mussels), and recreational fishers all use Waipiro Bay. If the marine ecosystem is disrupted, fish catches may decline and shellfish beds may be lost or closed due to contamination. This directly affects local whānau who gather kai moana to feed their families or to uphold cultural traditions. MPI has noted that Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha manage customary fishing in the area, underscoring that the bay is an important food basket. The project threatens to disadvantage locals who rely on fishing and gathering, by prioritizing private marina berths over sustainable harvesting. In the long term, the degradation of marine life could also hurt commercial and charter fishers, eco-tourism operators, and others who derive income from a healthy Bay of Islands marine environment.

Loss of Recreational Amenity: Waipiro Bay, in its current state, offers a natural, tranquil environment for recreation – whether it’s anchoring a boat for a quiet afternoon, swimming, kayaking, or simply enjoying an undeveloped bay. A 200+ berth marina with breakwaters and associated infrastructure will fundamentally change the character of the bay. The natural beauty and sense of remoteness could be replaced by a crowded, industrial atmosphere of concrete structures and moored boats. Public access could be curtailed – while the applicant must technically allow public access in the coastal marine area, in practice a marina often restricts where local people can freely boat or gather. Areas once open for anchoring or casual use may become off-limits or less accessible due to marina operations. Additionally, increased traffic (both on-road and on-water) raises safety and congestion issues. Locals are justifiably concerned that their quiet coastal community will be overrun by construction traffic and, later, by the influx of boat owners and marina visitors. The project’s own material emphasizes new parking, retail, and boat ramp facilities – essentially converting a peaceful bay into a busy commercial boating hub, without the community’s agreement.

Long-Term Sustainability vs. Short-Term Gain: The Waipiro Marina is pitched as providing economic and recreational benefits (e.g. more boat berths, support for tourism). However, these benefits will primarily accrue to the marina developers and boat owners (many of whom may be from outside the area), whereas the local community bears the long-term costs. Environmental degradation is not easily reversible – once shellfish beds are wiped out or a bird habitat is disturbed, it may not recover. The loss of mahinga kai areas and natural character is essentially permanent for future generations. This trade-off is not sustainable development; it is a short-term imposition on a community and ecosystem that have sustained themselves for centuries. True sustainability would prioritize the health of the environment and the well-being of local people over the desires of a few to moor more boats. As kaitiaki (guardians), the local hapū and community have been stewarding Waipiro Bay’s resources, and their cautious approach to any development should be heeded. The precautionary principle should apply – if we are not sure that the marina will not cause serious harm, it should not proceed. In this case, the lack of full environmental assessment and community buy-in indicates that the project fails the test of sustainability and caution.

Conclusion and Request

In summary, the proposed Waipiro Marina fast-track project poses unacceptable ecological risks, cultural impacts, and social costs. It threatens the thriving marine and bird life of Waipiro Bay – a bay noted for its ecological importance – without adequate study of the consequences. It stands to undermine the rights and relationship of local hapū with their ancestral waters, and has so far marginalized their voices in the decision-making process. It risks damaging cultural heritage sites and eroding the cultural landscape of the rohe. It has not meaningfully engaged the wider community, many of whom may lose environmental amenities, access to kai moana, and the quiet character of their bay.

Allowing this project to proceed under an accelerated process, with information gaps and insufficient consultation, would not serve the public interest of Aotearoa New Zealand. It would instead set a poor precedent that development can be pushed through at the expense of the environment and indigenous rights. I urge you to decline the fast-track approval for Waipiro Marina. At the very least, a full independent environmental impact assessment and a genuine consultation process with mana whenua and local communities must be completed before any such project is considered. The people of the Bay of Islands and the precious ecosystems of Waipiro Bay deserve nothing less.

Thank you for the opportunity to submit my concerns. I trust that you will give due weight to the ecological, cultural, and social issues raised, and act to protect the long-term well-being of Waipiro Bay and its community. I respectfully ask that you uphold kaitiakitanga and sustainable management by refusing consent to this marina proposal.

Ngā mihi nui,

Concerned Resident/Opponent of Waipiro Marina Project

Date: 1 May 2025

References (Extracts from Official Documents):

- Department of Conservation feedback on FTA229 – Waipiro Marina (18 June 2024)
 - Ministry for Primary Industries advice on FTA229 – Waipiro Marina (2024)
 - Fast-Track Application – Waipiro Marina (Azuma Property Ltd & Hopper Developments, May 2024)
 - MfE Stage 1 Assessment Report – Waipiro Marina (2024)
 - Department of Conservation feedback on cultural heritage (2024) (noting archaeological sites in vicinity)
- (All references above are from official documents released on the Ministry for the Environment website related to the Waipiro Marina fast-track project.)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

Wednesday 7th May 2025

Patukeha

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent the Hakaraia whanau o Patukeha and am authorised to provide this submission.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Kimberley Moriarty

Kororareka Marae

Corner of the Strand & Pitt Street,
Kororareka Russell
Postal: PO Box 20, Russell 0242
Email: marae@kororarekanz.com
Web: marae.kororarekanz.com

*Ko Maiki te Maunga, Ko Pikopiko i Whiti te Moana
Ko Kororareka te Pakainga, Ko Rahiri te Tupuna
Ko Haratu te Whare*



Kororāreka Marae represents the people of the Russell Peninsula and beyond who have family and historic connections to this rohe. We hold kaitiakitanga for the Kororāreka Russell peninsula with support from hapū in Taumarere and wider Ngāpuhi Nui Tonu. The tangata whenua of our town whakapapa to several hapū and iwi of the area – Ngāre Raumati, Ngāti Manu, Ngāti Kuta, Patukeha, Te Kapotai, and Ngā Puhi to name a few. Our marae is also ngā hau e whā so connect and works with the wider community of Kororāreka Russell.

Wednesday 14th May 2025

Kororareka Marae categorically oppose the current “fast track process” for the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina

Key points for Kororāreka submission.

Kororāreka Marae is strongly against the approval of Waipiro Marina as a Fast Track project and instead recommends that this development is submitted through the usual consenting process.

Kororāreka Marae is not, like many Hapū and Iwi organisations, not opposed to economic development. We welcome sustainable economic development. However, the rationale for projects being assessed for Fast Track must deliver significant national or regional economic benefits. This project, the development of a Marina in a remote and pristine location in the Eastern Bay of Islands, fails to pass this test. Instead, it seems to be an attempt to bypass the various checks and balances required to make it easier for the applicant to build infrastructure on sensitive seabed and land. Those checks and balances are there for good reason.

This is clearly not a project of national interest other than in the division that it is causing; neither is it identified as a project of regional significance. In fact, it flies against the regional economic development agency, Northland Inc’s plans Te Rerenga, which takes the Tai Tokerau Northland Economic Action Plan; He Tangata, He Whenua, He Oranga; Taitokerau Destination Management Plan amongst others to establish our economic wellness pathway. These plans all highlight that a thriving Māori economy is critical to the regional success underpinned by sustainable environmental stewardship.

Kororareka Marae

Corner of the Strand & Pitt Street,
Kororareka Russell
Postal: PO Box 20, Russell 0242
Email: marae@kororarekanz.com
Web: marae.kororarekanz.com

Ko Maiki te Maunga, Ko Pikopiko i Whiti te Moana
Ko Kororareka te Pakainga, Ko Rahiri te Tupuna
Ko Haratu te Whare



THEME	TE TAIAO OUR ENVIRONMENT	TE TANGATA OUR PEOPLE	TE ŌHANGA OUR ECONOMY
FUTURE STATE	Sustainable environmental stewardship (protect and restore)	Skilled, resilient workforce and workforce pipeline	Fit for purpose, resilient infrastructure and technology that enables productivity
KEY MISSION	Drive innovative solutions building environmental resilience	Grow skills and talent to ensure our people match our exciting growth opportunities	Boost infrastructure and investment to address Northland's infrastructure deficit
OWNER/S	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Central and local government Private sector Māori/business/community 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> MBIE, industry, government, community working together, including tertiary providers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Collaborative and cohesive commitment between the region, lwi, central and local government and private interests

Figure 1 Taitokerau Northland Economic Wellbeing Pathway Te Rerenga

There are several “red flags” in this application which were highlighted at the initial assessment stage, and these require due diligence to ensure the protection of this area of high cultural, historic and natural significance.

Kororareka Marae

Corner of the Strand & Pitt Street,
Kororareka Russell
Postal: PO Box 20, Russell 0242
Email: marae@kororarekanz.com
Web: marae.kororarekanz.com

*Ko Maiki te Maunga, Ko Pikopiko i Whiti te Moana
Ko Kororareka te Pakainga, Ko Rahiri te Tupuna
Ko Haratu te Whare*



Ineligibility criteria

The assessment for the application under Section 18 notes that the applicant “does not appear to be ineligible according to the information supplied by the applicant”.

However, there are red flags throughout the assessment of this application which give cause for concern.

The application has failed to comply with Section 11 (1) in that prior to submission, the **“applicant must consult”** any relevant iwi authorities, Hapū, about the proposal. The application notes that no consultation has taken place and, on this basis, alone, it fails at the first hurdle.

The project area includes seabed which is under public ownership but the application notes that the applicant has identified several groups with applications under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act.

The assessment notes the limited time available has not permitted to review the local Hapū plans, and it needs to be considered. The statement that it is not possible to confirm from these documents whether project is aligned to their ambitions can simply be answered by speaking to them. The answer is a resounding “Kahore” or “No”.

The assessment notes that this application is medium impact.

“Officials consider engagement would be beneficial.... But were unable to undertake this in the time available”

“Given the confidentiality requirements of this process, we have not been able to engage with our Treaty partners or address our obligations to give effect to Treaty principles. We recommend engagement with the Treaty partners to fully understand their perspectives.”

This application demands far better scrutiny, much better evaluation and in the words of the assessment team, there has been insufficient time available to examine this development in proper detail. The only option is to therefore decline the Fast Track application and require the application to go through the normal consenting process.

Kororareka Marae

Corner of the Strand & Pitt Street,
Kororareka Russell
Postal: PO Box 20, Russell 0242
Email: marae@kororarekanz.com
Web: marae.kororarekanz.com

*Ko Maiki te Maunga, Ko Pikopiko i Whiti te Moana
Ko Kororareka te Pakainga, Ko Rahiri te Tupuna
Ko Haratu te Whare*



Environmental and heritage considerations

As noted by the assessment by the Department of Conservation, not only does the area affect the sanctuary to protect Marine Mammals Te Pēwhairangi (Bay of Islands) Marine Mammal Sanctuary, Legislation: Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. This is an area of high cultural significance. Archaeological evidence indicates that the first Polynesian voyagers arrived in this area some 800 years ago, and the name Rakaumangamanga means the branching of the canoes, as this area was a waypoint in the Polynesian wayfinding triangle. These early inhabitants of the area have left rich archaeological evidence around the area.

In completion of this submission, we leave the following Whakatauki that ties all Hapu that whakapapa to Tokerau/ Ipipiri/Pēwhairangi to our whanaunga within Hokianga.

Ka mimiti te puna I Taumaarere
Ka toto te puna I Hokianga
Ka toto te puna I Taumaarere
Ka mimiti te puna I Hokianga”

Mauri Ora
Deb Rewiri
Chair Kororareka Marae

Kororareka Marae

Corner of the Strand & Pitt Street,
Kororareka Russell
Postal: PO Box 20, Russell 0242
Email: marae@kororarekanz.com
Web: marae.kororarekanz.com



*Ko Maiki te Maunga, Ko Pikopiko i Whiti te Moana
Ko Kororareka te Pakainga, Ko Rahiri te Tupuna
Ko Haratu te Whare*

Kororāreka Marae represents the people of the Russell Peninsula and beyond who have family and historic connections to this rohe. We hold kaitiakitanga for the Kororāreka Russell peninsula with support from hapū in Taumarere and wider Ngāpuhi Nui Tonu. The tangata whenua of our town whakapapa to several hapū and iwi of the area – Ngāre Raumati, Ngāti Manu, Ngāti Kuta, Patukeha, Te Kapotai, and Ngā Puhi to name a few. Our marae is also ngā hau e whā so connect and works with the wider community of Kororāreka Russell.

Wednesday 6th May 2025

To whom It may concern

I write on behalf of Kororareka Marae to support our whanaunga within the Rawhiti environs to STOP a proposed 250-berth marina in the pristine waters/moana of Waipiro Bay.

The long-term environmental impacts will have devastating ramifications that will last forever. Ngāti Kuta/Patu Keha hapu are currently dealing with effects of Caulerpa and then to have the “fast track” process deliver this proposal that only creates benefits for the Wealthy and disconnected from their Individual responsibilities back to the wellbeing of Tetai ao.

We refute the assertion that this Marina will provide long-term economic benefits to the region, however, to reiterate what it will mean for both the Community/Whanau and Hapu and the impacts on their Moana?

Mauri Ora
Deb Rewiri
Chair Kororareka Marae

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister

Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

Hon. Tama Potaka
Conservation - Minister
Māori Crown Relations - Minister
Māori Development - Minister
c/- s 9(2)(a)

10 May 2025

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

Tena koe e ngā Minita,

Ko Ngātokimatawhaorua, ko Mataatua ngā waka
Ko Ngāpuhi te iwi
Ko Rākaumangamanga te maunga
Ko Ipipiri te moana
Ko Moka te tupuna
Ko Patukeha te hapū
Ko Te Rāwhiti, ko Kaingahoa ngā marae
Ko Rahiri Pukepuke Ahitapu raua ko Dixie Biddle oku matua tūpuna
Ko Peti Pukepuke Ahitapu raua ko Neil Rogers oku matua
Ko Lamorna ahau

I am a resident of Te Rāwhiti and an economist by profession. I worked for the Reserve Bank of Australia between 2002 and 2019, where I was in management for the majority of that time. I have a First Class Honours degree in Economics from Macquarie University, and a Post-Graduate Diploma in Māori and Indigenous Leadership from the University of Canterbury (Distinction). I have been a trustee on the Motu Kōkako Ahu Whenua Trust since 2013, and was elected as a trustee on the Rāwhiti 3B2 Ahu Whenua Trust in December 2024.

I oppose both the Waipiro Bay Marina project, and the use of the Fast Track process to push it through without proper consultation. I support the submissions of Te Patukeha hapū and Ngāti Kuta hapū opposing Fast Track Approval of this project.

Like our hapū, I and many of my whānau oppose the Waipiro Marina project. Our reasons for opposing it include the environmental damage that it would cause, the significant economic risk to our tourism and fisheries industries that it would pose as a potential superspreader of caulerpa, and the exacerbation of existing economic inequalities. We do not believe that it meets the criteria for Fast Track Approval.

Environmental Damage

The applicant is effectively asking for exclusive occupation of a huge 9 hectares of coastal marine space. That is right where one of our main **pipi beds** is - Waipiro Bay - along with Te Karaka, Pōkataniwha, and Whiorau pipi beds. Construction of the marina and associated roading will kill these pipi beds and other kaimoana. We have already seen this happen when the roads were built - we lost oyster beds, tuangi, kōkota, pūpū due to road silt. Allowing privatisation of this huge marine coastal area, when our hapū have longstanding Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) applications pending, runs **counter to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi**.

The pipi beds are part of our customary **kapata kai** (food cupboard). Our late Nanny Puti Puru always told her mokopuna that they should never starve living beside a food cupboard. A pū rakau (story) from another of our kuia tells us of customary practices: “As one of many tamariki growing up in Te Rawhiti we used to venture over by boat to gather massive cockles from Waipiro bay. In those days...1950s...there was no road and no houses. Most of the time we just went to Whiorau for cockles. The Waipiro cockles were much bigger and when we had a hui...(tangi, unveiling, or any major gatherings where we had manuhiri at our Te Rawhiti Marae), us kids used to go to this beautiful bay to gather the big cockles. We all had our own "crews" doing this Mahi. We knew exactly where to go too. These kaimoana gathering skills were handed down from our parents”.

Waipiro Bay and Whiorau are not just part of the kapata kai for people, they are an important part of the **marine ecosystem**. Dolphins swim between the pipi beds at Whiorau and Waipiro, teaching their babies to feed. One of the mokopuna who has spent his life working on marina warns us that marina are never good for the environment. He also cautions that if one of the big yachts were to have an accident and spill oil, the marine ecosystem would be destroyed. There is no mention of these risks in the application.

The introduction of a 250-berth marina, which includes a target market of superyachts, would literally supercharge the **caulerpa ecological disaster** that is already happening in our rohe. Ōmakiwi Bay, which sits opposite Waipiro Bay, is Ground Zero for caulerpa in the Bay of Islands. At Easter, we had 500 tonnes of caulerpa land on the beaches there (see [article](#)). Ramping up marine traffic in this area will speed up the spread of this invasive seaweed, which smothers the seabed, effectively killing all life beneath it. Overseas experience with caulerpa infestations has shown a halving in fish biomass ([NZIER report](#)). Eric Muñoz, who helped eradicate caulerpa in California, reports that superyachts pose heightened risks (Muñoz, E. (2016), *Caulerpa Conquest: A Biological Eradication on the California Coast*).

Economic impacts

The economic impact of Waipiro Bay Marina is inflated and unreliable

The applicant's economic assessment claims that Waipiro Marina will have a total economic impact of \$177.9-\$218.8 million in value-added GDP and support approximately 137-148 FTE jobs over a 30-year period. These are developers' numbers - typically subject to **upwards bias** due to factoring in all the blue sky they can dream up, and completely ignoring downside risks.

For example, the applicants **assume an 80% - 100% occupancy rate** for the entire 30-year period. However, demand will be downwardly affected by the fact that the proposed marina is not easy to access, there are already excess berths available at Opua, and the marina is likely to become less appealing as it ages.

Vehicle access is difficult because there are only three options

- via Opua-Okiato, with a car/boat ferry charge of between \$36 - \$91.50, followed by a 20 - 30 minute drive, much of it on narrow, windy roads
- via the Russell Back Rd, which is a 1-hour trip, also on windy, narrow roads
- via Waikare, which is around 40 minutes and a precarious drive, not suitable for big boats.

Nowhere in the applicant's submission does it talk about the **traffic risks posed by 500+ extra movements per day** (their numbers). Our roads can be dangerous and we sometimes have fatalities (the latest being last year) - we can expect that to increase with a supercharged volume of local traffic. Higher mortality and disability will downwardly impact productivity and output.

The **relatively higher prices at Waipiro** can also be expected to weigh on demand, given the typically inverse relationship between price and demand. The applicant assumes prices at Waipiro Bay of \$80,000 - \$640,000 for berths of 10 - 20m, and \$640,000 - \$1,200,000 for berths of 20 - 30 metres. This compares to average prices at Opua of \$53,000 - \$464,000 at Opua for monohull berths of 10.5 - 20 metres, and \$860,000 for 22 metre berths (see Annexure 7 of the application).

The applicant's overall economic assessment claims that Waipiro Marina will have a total economic impact of \$177.9-\$218.8 million in value-added GDP over a 30-year period. This calculation is a **weird hybrid of contribution to GDP (economic output) and Net Present Value (NPV) calculation**. NPV is a financial concept, which is used to forecast cash flows over the life of a project discounted to the present, with the discount rate being the expected rate of return on the investment. Mixing GDP and NPV together is weird but I tried it anyway. I wasn't able to replicate their results with their stated discount rate of 5 per cent but I got close at 4.6 per cent (see table, 3rd column).

	Value Added GDP (\$M)	Net Present Value of Value Added GDP (\$M) (30 year term)			
		Discount rate = 4.6% <i>Applicant</i>	Discount rate = 7.8% <i>e.g. NZ Super Fund</i>	Discount rate = 10% <i>e.g. NZX 50</i>	Discount rate = 12% <i>Supernormal profits</i>
Construction phase	\$14.4	\$14.4	\$14.4	\$14.4	\$14.4
Ongoing p.a.(bottom)	\$10.1	\$162.6	\$115.88	\$95.2	\$81.4
Ongoing p.a.(top)	\$12.7	\$204.5	\$145.71	\$119.7	\$102.30
Total over 30 years (bottom)		\$177.0	\$130.3	\$109.6	\$95.8
Total over 30 years (top)		\$218.9	\$160.1	\$134.1	\$116.7

However, a discount rate of 4.6 per cent doesn't make sense, as it reflects a rate of return on the investment that is well below the average long-term returns for conservative investments like the NZ Super Fund, and long-term returns on the NZ stock market. Plugging the higher average rates of returns for these investments into the discount rate gives a much lower total economic impact of \$130.3-\$160.1 million (discount rate = 7.8 per cent) and \$109.6-\$134.1 million (discount rate = 10 per cent). However, for a project like Waipiro Bay Marina, with a substantial upfront investment and high risk profile, the investors are likely to be targeting more aggressive rates of return than are available by putting their money into a Super Fund or shares. Targeting supernormal returns of 12 per cent would see the NPV fall to \$95.8 - \$116.7 million, **which is a little under half of their estimated total economic return**. That said, the whole calculation is flawed. Forecasting value-added GDP over 30 years requires robust economic analysis that includes projections for macroeconomic factors such as the economic cycle, interest rates, inflation and global demand.

In summary, the **projected economic returns are unreliable and highly inflated**.

Economic risks and costs of caulerpa are huge

The applicant's economic assessment also ignores the substantial risks, and associated economic costs, due to the marina's amplification of the caulerpa crisis. NZIER modelling estimates **\$9.4 billion of the upper North Island's natural capital asset value could be lost over the next 30 years** (NZIER (Dec. 2024), [Fighting Invasive Caulerpa: A Business Case](#)). That includes an \$8.8 billion recreational and tourism loss, including recreational fishing – fish biomass has been halved in overseas caulerpa infestations. Recreational boating would be impacted with significant movement restrictions. There would be a \$118 million loss for commercial fishing, \$24 million for aquaculture and \$489.4 million in ecosystem services degradation.

Social inequality

Ōmarino, the estate at Waipiro Bay, is a gated community. There are literally huge gates that prevent us accessing Waipiro Bay unless we have 'permission'. These gates are firmly closed against us. We only have the right to go there by boat.

The applicant makes lofty claims of working with hapū but this is their track record. Adding a whole lot of rich yachties is not going to improve things. It will, however, exacerbate the inequality in our rohe. Te Rāwhiti is a Decile 1 community, which means we are in the lowest 10 per cent of socio-economic areas in Aotearoa. Low, often seasonal, incomes; high proportion of vulnerable whānau health-wise, and limited access to resources and services.



The applicant promises jobs for locals. Our experience is that these are minimum-wage service jobs - cleaning, gardening and other physical work. This is all honourable mahi but we aspire to the full range of mahi - in our rohe where our tūpuna were rangatira, we are more than servants to the rich. Our Ngāti Hine whanaunga tell us that similar promises were made when Opuā Marina was built but were not kept. There has been minimal benefit for locals.

Fast Track Approval

I am also satisfied that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project **does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval** because:

1. The application does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because it is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented seriously flawed economic and research data to falsely present itself as a development of significant regional benefit. It has omitted relevant information that would undermine its case.
2. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have not been adequately considered. The existence of wahi tapū has been denied despite Waipiro Bay being literally covered in wahi tapu.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

I request you to **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** so the proposal can proceed through the standard resource consenting process. Consultation will deliver the best available set of information to make these important decisions. There are obviously a lot of pros and cons to this proposal, and full and careful consideration is required in order to achieve the right outcome.

Mauri ora,

Lamorna Ahitapu-Rogers

Pukepuke whānau kaitiaki kei Te Rāwhiti

e.s 9(2)(a)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

8th May 2025

Kei Inch Kotahi Ahu Wehe Whanau Trust

Rawhiti 2A9A 69 WH 310-311

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent the Kei Inch Kotahi Ahu Wehe Whanau Trust and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A in Whiorau Bay which will be directly impacted by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Margaret Pamela Pascoe

(trustee/shareholder)

Hon. Chris Bishop

Infrastructure Minister

Fast-Track Approval

c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

Ko au ko Marion Julia Hakaraia on behalf of Te Raupatu raua ko Tuini Hakaraia Trust no Ngati Kuta te Iwi raua ko Patukeha te Hapu, have been authorised to provide this submission.

We represent 60 whanau members of Kaumatua, Pakeke, Rangatahi, Tamariki, Peepi support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates a tatou whakapapa, whenua, mana Motuhake, tikanga and wairua me nga taonga I tuku iho a tatou tupuna.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.
5. Does not meet the wishes and desires of our tupuna i hainatia te Tiriti o Waitangi

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,



Marion Julia Hakaraia

TE RAUPATU RAUA KO TUINI HAKARAIA TRUST

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

07 05 2025

Mokau Marae Trustees

Via email: S 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Tēnā koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

We, the Mokau marae Trustees, are authorized to submit this letter. We support the submission of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū, as it reflects our views.

We collectively oppose the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project, as it does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval for the following reasons: The proposed Waipiro Marina project could significantly impact the Ngātiwai MACA (Marine and Coastal Area) claim in several ways:

Customary Rights: The project may infringe on the customary rights and interests of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngātiwai, as protected under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011. The marina could disrupt traditional activities such as kaimoana (seafood) harvesting

Environmental Impact: The marina could lead to environmental degradation, affecting the marine ecosystem that Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngātiwai relies on. This includes the spread of invasive species like Caulerpa, which could further harm the marine environment

Legal and Cultural Considerations: The project may not adequately consider the legal and cultural implications for Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngātiwai. The Fast-Track Approval process might bypass thorough consultation and engagement with Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngātiwai, potentially undermining our MACA claim

Resource Management Act (RMA): The relationship between the MACA and the RMA is complex. Any rights won under the MACA could be nullified by resource consents and other prioritized activities under the RMA

Overall, the proposed marina could pose significant challenges to Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngātiwai MACA claim, affecting our customary rights, environmental stewardship, and legal standing.

The application also fails to satisfy Section 7 of the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, which pertains to Treaty settlements and recognized customary rights. There is no evidence that these have been adequately considered.

It does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act, as it is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. The application presents misleading economic and research data, creating a false perception of significant regional benefit.

It does not fulfill the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture.

It has yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12, and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We request that you decline the application for Fast-Track Approval, allowing the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process, where our views can be adequately considered. Should the Minister decide to advance the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to participate in that stage as well.

Clive Stone

Mokau Marae Trustees

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

4th May 2025

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent Patukeha hapu and am authorised to provide this submission.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my own personal views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Naezea Ryan

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

01 May 2025

Tohu Indigenous Ltd

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent my whānau and am authorised to provide this submission.

I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Nalini Cook

Tohu Indigenous Ltd.



Stopwaipiromarina <stopwaipiromarina@gmail.com>

Opposition to Fast-Track Waipiro Bay Marina – In Support of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha Hapū

Natalee Reti <s 9(2)(a)>

10 May 2025 at 20:23

To: s 9(2)(a)

Cc: stopwaipiromarina@gmail.com

Tēnā koutou ngā Minita,

I am writing as a concerned citizen and ally to express my strong opposition to the proposal to fast-track the 250-berth marina at Waipiro Bay, Bay of Islands.

This project is being advanced without genuine engagement or the free, prior, and informed consent of the mana whenua — Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū — who have continuously protected and upheld the wellbeing of this sacred moana.

Waipiro Bay is a taonga – a treasure of cultural, ecological, and spiritual significance. Fast-tracking a development of this scale, without robust environmental impact assessments and without respecting the voice of the tangata whenua, is a direct breach of the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. It also undermines the integrity of the Resource Management Act, which was designed to safeguard such areas through democratic and evidence-based processes.

I urge you to:

Reject the fast-track application for the Waipiro Bay marina;

Uphold the mana, tino rangatiratanga, and decision-making authority of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha;

Ensure that all future proposals undergo full cultural and environmental assessments, led by hapū and independent experts;

Support sustainable, hapū-led solutions that respect the mauri of the land and sea.

This is a defining moment to show leadership and uphold commitments to Māori partnership and environmental guardianship.

I stand in full support of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha, and I ask that you do the same.

Ngā mihi nui,

N Reti

Ngātiwai

Kia ū ki te tika, kia kaha ki te manaaki i te taiao me te mana whenua.

Stand firm in doing what is right — protect the environment and uphold mana whenua.

Nga mihi nui,

Natalee Reti

Kaiāwhina

He Puna Ruku Mātauranga O Whangaruru

s 9(2)(a)

Punaruku 0184

s 9(2)(a)

www.whangaruru.school.nz

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 March 2025

Ngati Kuta, Ngapuhi; Te Uri O Hikihiki, Ngati Wai

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

We, Nga Uri o Kara me Naini Hepi, stand in unwavering opposition to the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina in Te Rawhiti, Bay of Islands. Our uri, primarily of Ngāti Kuta descent but deeply connected to Patukeha, stand in unity with our hapū in rejecting this proposal.

The Fast Track Proposal Bill fails to meet the necessary legislative requirements for approval, and we list our reasons as follows:

1. **Failure to Satisfy the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024** – The application does not satisfy Section 7 of the Act concerning Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. There is no evidence that these matters have been adequately considered, rendering the application flawed.
2. **Misrepresentation of Regional and National Benefits** – The proposal does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria, as it is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. The proponents have presented misleading economic and research data, manufacturing the perception that it would bring meaningful regional advantages.
3. **Failure to Support Primary Industries** – The application does not meet Section 22(2)(v) of the Act, which requires developments to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture. The marina does not contribute meaningfully to this sector.
4. **Failure to Satisfy the Resource Management Act 1991** – The project has yet to appropriately address the requirements outlined in Sections 8, 12, and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991, raising further concerns about its viability and compliance.

Beyond legislative failings, this proposal threatens our way of life. Waipiro Bay is not just a coastline—it is our **pātaka kai**, a source of sustenance that has sustained our whānau for generations. We have gathered tuangi (cockles) and caught ika (fish) in the stream for years, preserving the mauri of our moana. Despite the supposed economic benefits, we refuse to sacrifice our environment for monetary gain.

Instead, we urge that the \$250 million earmarked for this development be invested in eradicating **Caulerpa**, the invasive species threatening our moana. You have long been part of our community—working alongside us, employing our people, and building your enterprise within our rohe. Yet now, our rohe is under attack, not by an external force, but by a business opportunity that disregards the very essence of our existence.

We may lack financial resources to fight this development, but we have **passion**. We do not support large-scale development in our rohe, and we care little for commercial viability. What we care about is protecting the environment and safeguarding our **moana** for future generations. We do not require external investment to uplift ourselves—we can create our own opportunities that do not compromise our land and waters.

We urge you to reconsider this proposal and prioritise the protection of **Te Taiao** over financial gain.

Should this battle be lost—and battle we will—our conditions for compromise are as follows:

- The marina must be **exclusive**, allowing no more than **20 boats**.
- **No further marinas, jetties, or similar developments** will be permitted within our rohe.
- The remaining funds **must** be directed toward environmental protection efforts.
- **Strict biosecurity protocols** must be enforced, ensuring that **all boats using the marina are thoroughly inspected and cleaned** to prevent the spread of invasive species.
- A **portion of marina fees** must be allocated to our community for environmental protection, in an effort to mitigate the negative impact of the development.
- In the future, you and your team **must work alongside us** to address any environmental threats affecting our rohe, ensuring shared accountability for the well-being of our lands and waters.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora.

Nga manaakitanga,

Nga Uri o Kara me Naini Hepi.

From: Ngāhere Ririnui-Ryan, on behalf of the Wiitekoihoho Ahuwhenua Trust

Location: 874 Rawhiti Road, Rawhiti

Date: 2/05/2025

1. Introduction

I am submitting this statement on behalf of the Wiitekoihoho Ahuwhenua Trust which is of the Howe/Hau Family, who are tangata whenua of the Eastern Bay of Islands. Our whānau has deep and enduring ties to Waipiro Bay and the surrounding coastline, where both our hapū continue to exercise kaitiakitanga over these lands and waters. We strongly oppose the proposed development of a marina at Waipiro Bay, and further object to its inclusion under the Government's Fast-track Approvals Bill.

2. Summary of Our Position

The proposed marina:

- Threatens one of the last remaining natural seabeds in the area, rich in edible shellfish and vital to our food systems and cultural identity.
- Introduces serious risk of further spread of *Caulerpa*, a highly invasive marine species that is already encroaching on Northland waters.
- Will drastically increase traffic and development pressure in a culturally and ecologically sensitive location.
- Contravenes existing strategic planning developed through consultation and proper process.
- Undermines mana whenua rights and responsibilities as kaitiaki, and bypasses local voices through the fast-track mechanism.

3. Detailed Concerns

Environmental and Ecological Impacts

Waipiro Bay contains one of only few remaining natural shellfish beds in the region. These beds are a vital customary food source and form part of our whakapapa and obligations to the moana. Construction of a marina will directly impact these ecosystems through dredging, reclamation, increased boat activity, and biosecurity risks.

The risk of *Caulerpa* spreading further is made worse by increased marine traffic. This algae is a major threat to indigenous marine biodiversity and kaimoana. Fast-tracking this proposal prevents the necessary precautionary approach and undermines coordinated regional efforts to manage this risk.

Contradiction of Regional Strategy

The proposal directly conflicts with the **Northland Regional Council's Moorings and Marina Strategy for the Eastern Bay of Islands (2014–2034)**. That strategy, created with input from local communities and technical experts, identifies suitable locations for marine development. Waipiro Bay was never identified as a preferred location. To bypass that work with a one-off fast-track decision undermines regional planning integrity.

Disregard for Mana Whenua

There has been **no proper engagement** with our hapū regarding this proposal. Fast-tracking a development of this scale without recognising mana whenua perspectives or tino rangatiratanga breaches the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Our ability to exercise kaitiakitanga is being ignored in favour of private development interests.

Unwanted Pressure on Rural Infrastructure

Manawaora Road and surrounding accessways are not designed to carry the level of traffic a full marina would generate. Increased construction and visitor traffic would place a strain on rural infrastructure, create safety risks, and alter the quiet, community-based character of our area.

4. The Fast-Track Bill is Inappropriate for this Project

This project is not minor. It requires assessments by over **10 types of technical experts**, including marine ecologists, archaeologists, landscape architects, and coastal scientists. That complexity alone should disqualify it from any fast-track pathway. Short-cutting due diligence through this Bill weakens environmental protections, suppresses local voices, and sets a dangerous precedent for other developments.

5. Recommendations

- Remove the Waipiro Bay marina proposal from the Fast-track Approvals list immediately.
- Require full and open public process under the Resource Management Act, including environmental impact assessments and mana whenua consultation.
- Uphold the integrity of the NRC's existing strategic plan for marina development in the Eastern Bay of Islands.
- Recognise and support the role of hapū in protecting the mauri of our coastal ecosystems.

6. Conclusion

This proposal disrespects the whenua, the moana, and the people who have cared for them for generations. It risks irreversible damage to a taonga ecosystem, and pushes aside the very communities who are most affected. We ask you to protect the future of Waipiro Bay by halting this fast-track process and allowing proper process, transparency, and kaitiakitanga to guide any development decisions.

Nāku noa, nā

Ngāhere Ririnui-Ryan

On behalf of the Wiitekoihoho Ahuwhenua Trust, Howe/Hau Whānau

NgāhereR

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

07 May 2025

Ngatiwai Trust Board Resource Management Unit (RMU)

Via email **s 9(2)(a)**

Tēnā koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

We, the Ngatiwai Trust Board RMU, are authorized to submit this letter. We support the submission of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū, as it reflects our views.

We collectively oppose the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project, as it does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval for the following reasons: The proposed Waipiro Marina project could significantly impact the Ngatiwai MACA (Marine and Coastal Area) claim in several ways:

Customary Rights: The project may infringe on the customary rights and interests of Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngatiwai, as protected under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011. The marina would disrupt traditional activities such as kaimoana (seafood) harvesting

Environmental Impact: The marina could lead to environmental degradation, affecting the marine ecosystem that Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngatiwai relies on. This includes the spread of invasive species like Caulerpa, which could further harm the marine environment

Legal and Cultural Considerations: The project may not adequately consider the legal and cultural implications for Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngatiwai. The Fast-Track Approval process might bypass thorough consultation and engagement with Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngatiwai, potentially undermining our MACA claim

Resource Management Act (RMA): The relationship between the MACA and the RMA is complex. Any rights won under the MACA could be nullified by resource consents and other prioritized activities under the RMA

Overall, the proposed marina could pose significant challenges to Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū

And the Ngatiwai MACA claim, affecting our customary rights, environmental stewardship, and legal standing.

The application also fails to satisfy Section 7 of the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, which pertains to Treaty settlements and recognized customary rights. There is no evidence that these have been adequately considered.

It does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act, as it is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. The application presents misleading economic and research data, creating a false perception of significant regional benefit.

It does not fulfill the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture.

It has yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12, and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We request that you decline the application for Fast-Track Approval, allowing the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process, where our views can be adequately considered. Should the Minister decide to advance the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to participate in that stage as well.

Mauri ora,

Clive Stone
Ngatiwai Trust Board RMU

Paul Smith

s 9(2)(a)

s 9(2)(a)

s 9(2)(a)

7th May 2025

The FIRST question ?

Does a private Marina even qualify as a Fast Track candidate?

(Applying doesn't make it so.)

Purpose of the ACT.

"A permanent Fast Track Approvals regime for a range of infrastructure, housing and development projects with significant regional or national benefits."

In what way does a marina fit the purpose of the bill?

Infrastructure = NO

Housing = NO

Development Project = YES/NO (see below¹)

with:

Significant Regional Benefit = NO

Significant National Benefit = NO

(Note 1: Development project definition.

'A "development project" is a multifaceted initiative aiming to create or improve something, often within a specific context like a community, sector, or region. It encompasses a range of activities, from building infrastructure to implementing new technologies, with the goal of fostering social, economic, and environmental progress.' source: Google AI)

Considering the scope of 'regional'.

Does the project meets aspirations for enhancing:

Social = NO

Economic = Maybe, a minute amount.

Environmental = NO.

What is a Marina?

A marina is an on water storage system, in this case, for private vessels.

What would this application achieve if successful?

NOTHING other than adding a new extraction site for the applicant.

Who benefits?

It is constructed and operated by a private company primarily for the benefit of the small number of shareholders and secondly the vendor of the boat owners. Estimated number of beneficiaries is less than 300.

Is it essential?

NO. It is neither strategic or necessary.

Does it benefit the population in the region?

NO, It is private property.

Can the public access the facility?

NO. Access is highly restricted to owners and approved operational personnel.

Does it remove public access to anything?

YES. It removes all rights to freely access the bay, foreshore and sea for all time.

Is the loss of access small?

NO. It is a significant area.

Does it enhance the surrounding area?

NO, it is an abatement in a largely undeveloped region noted and valued for its environmental beauty, tranquility and other amenity values. The area is a major drawcard on the tourist map to a significant extent due to these intrinsic values.

Is it destructive?

YES. Construction requires major modification of the environment including dredging and removal of large quantities of seabed.

Will it have ADVERSE effects on the environment?

YES. Marinas concentrate activity into a single location. They generate traffic and industrialisation. Further every vessel is a slow release marine toxin and contaminant source due to the requirement of antifouling. If haul out facilities are included, noise, toxicity and visual impairment elevated to another level. Fuel supply, waste disposal and other consequences add layers of risk and adverse effects.

Are there existing processes for the Marina application.

YES. A resource consent application would be the normal process. Various aspects would likely be Discretionary or Non Compliant. Multiple consents would need to be processed.

The LAW.

Government is walking a fine line with Fast Track.

Parliament is not supposed to make additional laws for which an existing law is sufficient or exists for the purpose.

Further, laws that benefit private organisations or individuals MUST be by way of private bills/legislation.

Fast Track effectively creates a new Class of activity that has been deemed to need special treatment in order to reduce the time and cost to approval stage.

It does this by creating a special bureaucracy and omitting established processes.

This forces the FIRST question.

Does this activity meet the special criteria?

Critically, the criteria of Significant Regional or National Benefit MUST be met.

The supervisors of the Fast Track Approvals process have to ensure that every project meets the purpose terms as specified in law.

This SIGNIFICANT BENEFIT case needs to be upfront, validated and obvious to all for it to be legitimate. Anything less is corruption and would be unacceptable.

IMO, this Marina build application does not and cannot meet the minimum criteria for being admitted into Fast Track. It is a blatant attempt to circumvent due process.

ANY coastal construction of a private benefit nature should need to be applied via the normal channels under the existing processes with FNC and NRC.

6th May 2025

Tēnā koe,

As an uri of **Whetoi Pōmare** and a whanaunga of the mana whenua in **Waipiro Bay**, I write in strong opposition to the proposed development of a 250-berth marina by **Azuma Property Limited and Hopper Developments**.

I stand in full support of **Ngāti Kuta and Te Patu Keha**, who have clearly and courageously voiced their opposition to this plan and launched a campaign to protect our moana. I back their call for the application to follow the **full Resource Management Act (RMA) process**—not be pushed through the **Fast Track** mechanism which undermines local and hapū voices.

We have seen this narrative before—rhetoric promising *jobs, investment, and opportunity*—used to justify the expansion of the Opuā Marina. In reality, **very few mana whenua were employed**, and the ecological costs have been borne by our people and our environment. It is an insult to suggest that temporary or minimal economic gains can outweigh the **long-term environmental degradation** inflicted on our ancestral waters.

Our moana is not a commodity. It is a living taonga that sustains our people and holds the wairua of generations past. The proposed 9-hectare development will bring irreversible changes—dredging, pollution, disruption of natural ecosystems—and all for the benefit of private developers and wealthy boat owners.

This proposal is **not in the interests of tangata whenua**, nor does it serve the wider community when decision-making is stripped from them.

I call on all those in positions of influence to uphold the voices of **mana whenua** and to **honour Te Tiriti o Waitangi**. Let the community speak. Let hapū be heard. Let our moana live.

Ka tū tonu mātou – we stand firm.

Ngā manaakitanga,

Phoebe Davis

Uri o Whetoi Pōmare

Ngāti Manu

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Rangimarie Higgison Whānau Trust

Rawhiti 2A9A 69 WH 310-311 and Rawhiti 2A9B ML 430405

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent Rangimarie Higgison Whānau Trust and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A in Whiorau Bay which will be **directly impacted** by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Frederick William Higgison (trustee)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

6 May 2025

Renee Higgison

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

We are ngā uri ō Tiaroa rāua ko Irirongo Hakaraia and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views whole heartedly.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. It does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. It does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. We presently reside in Wellington and have whānau all over the country. This will allow our views to be adequately collated and presented, allowing fair and just participation.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,



Renee Higgison (signature), Marli Paul, Rylee Herewini, Layne Herewini

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

8th May 2025

Rhonda Denise Lawrence Whanau Trust
Rawhiti 2A9A 69 WH 310-311

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent the Rhonda Denise Lawrence Whanau Trust and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A in Whiorau Bay which will be directly impacted by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Rhonda Denise Lawrence
(trustee/shareholder)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister Fast-
Track Approval c/-
ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

9th May 2025

Sarah Louise Arnold
Patukeha
Uri/Beneficiary of s 9(2)(a)

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent myself and my 3 children Tiaia Keltin Arnold Adams, Te Ria Rangimarie Adams and Te Akau Tuhi Tafia Adams and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Patukeha and Ngati Kuta hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A in Whiorau Bay which will be directly impacted by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Sarah Louise Arnold
Uri/Beneficiary s 9(2)(a)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

3rd May 2025

Patukeha Hapu.

Via email s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent ARU whanau/ PATUKEHA.

hapu and am authorised to provide this submission.
I support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates my views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,



Shane Cowley Harris

3/5/2025

Tēnā koe

I am writing to oppose the proposed marina at Waipiro Bay going through under Fast Track. I oppose it because it will damage the natural environment and the relationship that mana whenua and the wider community and public have with Waioiro Bay. I oppose it because more boats in Waimarino Bay will mean more disturbance to bird and sea life. I oppose it because with climate change, power boating should be a dying sport. I oppose it because the Fast Track Act is an undemocratic load of bollocks that has absolutely no mandate.

Be on the right side of history and reject this marina.

I request to speak to this submission.

Yours sincerely,
Sonja Mitchell

Suka Vaeagi

s 9(2)(a)

Rotorua, 3015

s 9(2)(a)

03/05/2025

To Whom It May Concern,

As a proud Samoan and Pacific Islander, I write this letter in strong support of the local Māori community opposing the construction of a marina at Waipiro Bay.

Waipiro Bay is not just a place, it is identity, it is genealogy, it is sacred. The proposed marina is not just a development, it is a disruption to the spiritual and cultural integrity of a site that holds deep meaning to the Tangata Whenua.

From one indigenous community to another, I recognize the importance of standing in solidarity. We in the Pacific know all too well the impacts of colonization, environmental degradation, and the marginalization of indigenous voices. These patterns cannot continue, especially not at the cost of erasing heritage or compromising the mana of Māori land and people.

Waipiro Bay is a taonga. The stories, the sacred sites, the marine life, the connection to tūpuna, all of it deserves protection and respect.

I urge decision-makers to listen to the voices of the local hapū and iwi. Uphold indigenous sovereignty. Protect the land and the ocean for the people of today, and the generations to come.

Regards,

Suka Vaeagi

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Tiaroa Hakaraia Whānau Trust

Rawhiti 2A9A 69 WH 310-311 and Rawhiti 2A9B ML 430405

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent Tiaroa Hakaraia Whānau Trust and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A and 2A9B in Whiorau Bay which will be **directly impacted** by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Frederick William Higgison (trustee/shareholder)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

7 May 2025

Tiaroa Hakaraia Whānau Trust

Rawhiti 2A9A 69 WH 310-311 and Rawhiti 2A9B ML 430405

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent Tiaroa Hakaraia Whānau Trust and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners of Rawhiti 2A9A and 2A9B in Whiorau Bay which will be **directly impacted** by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Frederick William Higgison (trustee/shareholder)

3/5/2025

To whom it may concern,

As a direct descendant of Moka Te Kainga-mata of Patu Keha from the neighbouring bay, I write to strongly oppose the proposed marina development in Waipiro Bay, Bay of Islands.

Our tupuna left us here with a purpose — to be kaitiaki of this whenua and moana. This responsibility is not ceremonial or passive — it is active, enduring, and deeply rooted in whakapapa. Any development that threatens this sacred duty must be met with strong resistance.

I am in disbelief that this "fast-track" nonsense has even been considered. It is an insult — not just to us as mana whenua, but to the entire concept of due process, environmental protection, and Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Trying to bypass proper scrutiny for the sake of convenience or economic gain shows blatant disregard for the whenua, the moana, and our role as kaitiaki.

One clear example of the damage caused by careless development and recreational marine activity is the spread of Caulerpa, an invasive seaweed choking our seabeds and killing our kai moana. This weed has spread because of negligent boat owners — many of them the same kind of wealthy marina users who treat our taonga like a playground, dragging anchor chains and contaminated gear through pristine waters. A new marina will only increase the risk, bringing even more boats, more anchor traffic, and more exposure to invasive species that devastate our ecosystems. It's our people who suffer the loss — the loss of kaimoana, of clean moana, of the ability to uphold our responsibilities to this place.

Waipiro Bay is not just a location on a map. It is part of our whakapapa, our stories, our tikanga. It is not for sale, not for convenience, and not for those who view it as nothing more than a scenic spot to moor their luxury boats.

I strongly oppose this proposal and call on those in power to do the same. Protect Waipiro Bay. Respect the kaitiaki. Honour Te Tiriti. Say no to this marina.

Nāku noa, nā

Troy Hohaia Rakuraku

s 9(2)(a)

Auckland
Aotearoa

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister
Fast-Track Approval
c/- ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz
6 May 2025

Te Kapotai - Waikare Māori Trustees Committee
Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tena koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

We represent Te Kapotai (Waikare Māori Committee) and am authorised to provide this submission.

We support the submission of Ngati Kuta and Patukeha hapu, as it incorporates our views. We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure

project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered.
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit.
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture, and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We seek that you decline the application for Fast-Track Approval to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that stage 2 also.

Mauri ora,

Vanessa Reti (Secretary)

Waikare Māori Committee (Te Kapotai)

Hon. Chris Bishop
Infrastructure Minister Fast-
Track Approval c/-
ftareferrals@mfe.govt.nz

15th May 2025

Josi Detroit Witehira on behalf of the uri ō Pita Witehira
Patukeha me Ngāti Kuta

Via email: s 9(2)(a)

Tēnā koe e te Minita,

Re: Fast-Track Approval for Waipiro Marina

I represent myself, and the whānau of Pita Witehira, uri of Patukeha me Ngāti Kuta hapū - direct descendants of Rewa and Moka, two of the founding brothers of Patukeha.

Waipiro Bay is a taonga to our hapū and to our whānau. Our father, Pita Witehira, has passed down pūrākau about our connection to this Bay, and us as his children have been raised returning to the bay and the surrounding areas throughout our lives.

As we drive the road toward our papakainga, in Te Rāwhiti, we are welcomed by Waipiro Bay and the magnificent, untouched beauty that it beholds. As children, we listened to our father tell stories about the pā sites on the hill overlooking the Bay, and rolling our eyes as we had heard the stories a number of times before. However, as adults, we find ourselves sharing those same stories to our tamaiti, passing on the history and the knowledge that we are now so grateful to have obtained.

This is where the mauri of the Bay comes from, and where our connection to the Bay will never cease. Neighbours may come and go, and enjoy our moana, but they will never understand the depth of connection that we as a hapū have to this area. Our ahikātanga will never cease, as displayed by the whawhai that we continue to undertake to protect the serenity of this Bay.

These are the stories that are lacking within the Application before us, and will be put to the wayside if the Application is to be referred to the Fast-Track process. The voices of us as tangata whenua will be lost, and the cultural significance of this area will be forgotten.

We therefore implore you, e te Minita, to consider the implications of forgetting the voice of the people, and allow us to have a say through the usual consenting processes.

We support the submission of Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta hapu, as it incorporates our views.

We are united in the position of opposition, that the proposed Waipiro Bay Marina Infrastructure project does not meet the criteria for Fast-Track Approval because:

1. The application has not satisfied the Fast-Track Approval Act 2024, Section 7 relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights. The application is void of any evidence that Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights have been adequately considered;
2. Does not meet the Section 22 Referral Criteria of the Act because is not a development of significant regional or national benefit. It has presented misleading economic and research data, creating a perception that it is a development of significant regional benefit;
3. Does not meet the Section 22 (2) (v) requirement to support the Primary Industries, including aquaculture; and
4. It is yet to appropriately satisfy Sections 8, 12 and 17 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

We are the tangata whenua and Māori landowners which will be directly impacted by the Azuma property marina development proposal in Waipiro Bay.

We seek that you **decline the application for Fast-Track Approval** to enable the proposal to proceed through the standard resource consenting process. This will allow our views to be adequately considered.

Should the Minister decide to progress the proposal to Stage 2 of the FTA process, we request to be able to participate in that process.

Kia tau te mauri,



Josi Detroit Witehira

Uri ō Pita Witehira

Protect Waipiro Bay: Do not fast-track approve the proposed 200–250
Berth Marina

A petition To: Ministry for the Environment, MPI, DOC, NRC, FNDC, MBIE,
The NZ Government

Please find attached the petition documents as current at 14 May 2025
signed by 12,036 people.

Page	Description
2-4	Petition description and wording
4-407	Name and postcode of petitioners in order of signing
408-658	Name and postcode of petitioners in alphabetical order by surname

Protect Waipiro Bay: Do not fast-track approve the proposed 200-250 Berth Marina

To: Ministry for the Environment, MPI, DOC, NRC, FNDC, MBIE, The NZ Government

We call upon the responsible Ministries and their respective Ministers to decline Application FTA229 and refer it to the standard Resource Management Act (RMA) consent process, where robust environmental assessment, public participation, and mana whenua engagement are properly upheld.

Submitted on 3 May 2024, the application to build a 250-berth marina is fundamentally flawed and fails to meet key eligibility criteria required for referral and approval through the Fast-Track process. It also breaches legal, environmental, and cultural requirements under both the Fast-Track Approvals Act and the Resource Management Act (RMA).

It further ignores matters critical to our community, our vulnerable environment, our cultural landscapes and our way of life in the Eastern Bay of Islands.

The proposed Waipiro Bay Marina development is based on a flawed and misleading economic assessment. The application inflates projected demand and misrepresents existing data.

Currently, Northland is home to nine marinas with a combined total of 1,575 berths. An additional marina is under construction in Whangārei, which will initially provide space for 117 vessels, with spaces still available. Also, according to NRC data, 46 berths are currently vacant and available across Northland, including 20 at the nearby Ōpua Marina—just a 49–56-minute drive from Waipiro Bay. Many of these berths remain vacant throughout the year and are being offered at discounted rates due to persistently lower demand than previously anticipated, which is a clear regional trend the proposal fails to acknowledge.

In addition to marina availability, Waipiro Bay already accommodates 62 moorings, with neighbouring Parekura Bay holding a further 69. These have been introduced incrementally over time, allowing the local community and natural environment to adapt without overwhelming visual or ecological disruption.

By contrast, the proposed 250-berth marina would nearly triple the current number of vessels in the area—from 131 to 381—an increase of over 80%. This would result in a sudden and dramatic escalation in boat traffic and density, significantly altering the visual landscape and placing immense pressure on the marine ecosystem. The adverse environmental consequences—particularly to biodiversity, water quality, and the ecological balance of the inlet—would be immediate and long-lasting.

Critically, the application also bypasses public consultation, Māori landowners of whenua Māori around the proposed development site and inlet, denying local residents and mana whenua the opportunity to meaningfully participate in decisions about the future of this coastal taonga. It disregards Māori rights and interests protected under Section 7 of the Fast-Track Approvals Act, including obligations relating to Treaty settlements and recognised customary rights.

Furthermore, the proposal fails to meet the criteria outlined in Section 22 of the Fast-Track referral criteria of the Act, which require projects to demonstrate clear and significant national or regional benefits and alignment with strategic priorities, such as support for primary industries (Section 22 (2) (v)). Notably, the proposed marina site is located within an aquaculture exclusion zone—where aquaculture operations are not permitted—placing it in direct conflict with established regional planning provisions.

We call for this proposal to be declined under the Fast-Track process and instead referred to the standard Resource Management Act (RMA) consent pathway, where robust environmental scrutiny, public participation, and mana whenua engagement are guaranteed.

The proposed development does not address local iwi and hapū concerns and does not consider the potential impacts on local hapū and iwi in accordance with the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act (MACA).

If Application FTA229 is referred by the Minister to an expert panel under Schedule 2 of the Fast-Track Approvals Act and subsequently approved, the Government risks breaching multiple legal and constitutional obligations. These include statutory duties under the Resource Management Act, particularly those relating to environmental protections, planning consistency, and public participation (Section 6 (a, b, e & f), Sections 12 & 17). It would also contravene key provisions of the Fast-Track Approvals Act itself—specifically Section 7, which upholds Māori rights, Treaty settlements, and recognised customary interests, and Section 22, which requires that projects demonstrate clear, significant, and regionally or nationally beneficial outcomes aligned with strategic priorities. Furthermore, proceeding with this application in its current form would be

inconsistent with the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, including active partnership, meaningful participation, and protection of our taonga. It would override existing regional planning instruments—such as aquaculture exclusion zones—without proper due process, setting a dangerous precedent for coastal development and undermining the integrity of New Zealand’s environmental and planning framework.

What are some of the impacts of the proposed development?

Ultimately, this development must be stopped. A project of this scale—with serious cultural, ecological, and social implications—requires transparent, evidence-based decision-making that respects both the environment and the communities who call this place home.

The proposed marina would cause irreversible damage:

- To the Treaty partnership between the government, mana whenua and hapū
- Destroying areas of cultural harvest significance
- Eliminating native wildlife habitat, including that of high-risk species
- Altering the ecological and visual landscape of Waipiro Bay
- Privatising 9 hectares of public marine space
- Extinguishing customary food-gathering areas

Shockingly, the application lacks basic environmental assessments, including:

- An Ecological Survey
- A Hydrology Survey
- A Cultural Impact Assessment
- A robust Assessment of Environmental Effects (AEE)
- Robust community input and engagement

Waipiro Bay is not just water—it is our taonga, a source of identity, sustenance, and intergenerational connection. We cannot protect our culture, pataka kai, and wildlife without proper evidence and an inclusive process.

This development must return to the proper consent pathway, so the voices of the Bay of Islands are heard.

To our community: Let’s stand together to protect our waters, kai sources, wildlife, and future.

Sign the petition to stop this harmful development and safeguard Waipiro Bay for generations to come.

What is the proposal?

A local family with a commercial arm has proposed to build a 250+ berth marina. This marina is intended to service a wide range of vessel sizes. The proposal claims that the marina will benefit the public by:

- Reducing traffic at Te Uenga Boat Ramp
- Providing potential key utilities (note – these are already available at the Opua marina);
- Providing retail services.

In summary, the proposal appears to provide mere convenience for a small portion of the community and does not provide a significant benefit at a regional or national level.

What is required to approve Fast Track?

Under the Fast-Track Approvals Act, the following considerations are made when determining whether to approve fast track of a consent application:

- the project is an infrastructure or development project that would have significant regional or national benefits; and
- referring the project to the fast-track approvals process –
- would facilitate the project by enabling it to be processed in a timely and cost-effective manner; and
- is unlikely to materially affect the efficient operation of the fast-track approvals process.

In considering whether to refer the application to the fast-track approvals process, the relevant Minister must consider the following:

- Whether the project would be inconsistent with a Treaty settlement or a joint management agreement;
- whether it would be better dealt with under other legislation;

- whether the project has significant adverse effects on the environment;
- whether the project area includes land that is considered necessary for a Treaty settlement process.

Because Waipiro Bay is more than just a piece of coastline—it’s part of who we are. Here’s why it matters:

- Waipiro Bay is a taonga, home to rich marine life, cultural traditions, and a close-knit community.
- The Eastern Bay of Islands have been kept free of large-scale commercial development to preserve its scenic beauty and natural value. Maintaining its natural integrity is the best long-term economic and ecological value to the public.
- The proposed marina would privatise public water, destroy customary food-gathering areas, and alter the bay forever.
- The application bypasses due process, silencing local voices, ignoring Māori rights, and skipping essential environmental protections.
- We have the evidence: demand for marina berths is low, and this project offers no proven regional or national benefit.
- The sharp rise in boat density will further strain the already over-saturated Eastern Bay of Islands.
- The economic benefits will go solely to the developers, with no meaningful revenue such as rates going to Council or the public. Instead, the marina will increase infrastructure costs, adding pressure to already limited Council resources.

References

<https://environment.govt.nz/acts-and-regulations/acts/fast-track-approvals/>
<https://www.dockland5.co.nz/>
<https://www.sail-world.com/news/268425/Okara-Marina-Berths-now-available>
<https://data-nrcgis.opendata.arcgis.com/datasets/aquaculture-exclusion-areas-5>
<https://www.whangareimarina.com/okara-marina>
<https://www.boaties.co.nz/nearest/marinas>
<https://www.boaties.co.nz/marinas/northland>
<https://www.nrc.govt.nz/maritime/moorings/moorings-for-sale-or-rent-listings/>
<https://www.legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2011/0003/latest/DLM3597250.html>
<https://www.legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2024/0056/latest/LMS943260.html>
<https://www.epa.govt.nz/fast-track-consenting/fast-track-approvals-act-2024/>
<https://www.nrc.govt.nz/resource-library-summary/plans-and-policies/moorings-and-marinas-strategy/moorings-and-marinas-strategy/>
<https://www.legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1991/0069/latest/DLM230265.html>
<https://www.bayofislandsmarina.co.nz/superyacht-mooring>
<https://www.xn--morilandcourt-wqb.govt.nz/en>
MAC-01-01-076: Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha ki Te Rawhiti/ CIV-2017-485-321.

Signed by 12,036 people:

Name	Postcode
Jessie Patch	0184
Shane Witehira	0112
Joseph Davidson	0184
Charles Wellington	0492
Nicki Wakefield	0174
Blanche McMath	3118